

BBC

# Speak out

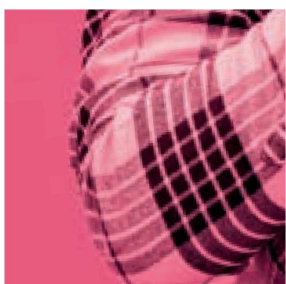
3<sup>RD</sup> EDITION

B1

Workbook



B1



Lindsay Warwick

**Workbook**





B B C

# Speak <out

3<sup>RD</sup> EDITION



**Workbook**



# CONTENTS

	VOCABULARY	GRAMMAR	PRONUNCIATION
<b>1A</b> p4–5	people and relationships; personality adjectives	present simple and present continuous; state verbs; adverbs of frequency	connected speech: <i>do you</i>
<b>1B</b> p6–7	jobs; work	verb patterns	syllable stress
<b>1C   1D</b> p8–9	conversation topics	modifiers	rhythm and intonation
<b>2A</b> p10–11	adjectives for feelings; <i>-ed/-ing</i> adjectives	narrative tenses	weak forms of <i>was, were</i> and <i>had</i>
<b>2B</b> p12–13	story words; types of film	past simple and present perfect	contracted <i>have</i> in the present perfect
<b>2C   2D</b> p14–15	collocations with <i>get</i> and <i>make</i>	prepositions of time	intonation for apologising
<b>REVIEW 1–2</b> p16–17			
<b>3A</b> p18–19	knowledge; verbs and nouns	question forms	stressed words in questions
<b>3B</b> p20–21	decisions	future plans and intentions	weak forms of <i>are you</i> and <i>going to</i>
<b>3C   3D</b> p22–23	facilities; places in a city	phrasal verbs	polite intonation
<b>4A</b> p24–25	success	modals for rules and advice	silent letters
<b>4B</b> p26–27	technology collocations; word building: suffixes	articles	<i>the</i>
<b>4C   4D</b> p28–29	sports and games	present perfect + superlative	<i>can</i> and <i>can't</i>
<b>REVIEW 3–4</b> p30–31			
<b>5A</b> p32–33	news and social media	relative clauses	<i>wh-</i>
<b>5B</b> p34–35	social issues; the environment	reported speech	silent letters
<b>5C   5D</b> p36–37	events and occasions	<i>will, might</i> and <i>be going to</i> for predictions	intonation to exaggerate feelings
<b>6A</b> p38–39	the arts	<i>used to</i>	<i>used to</i>
<b>6B</b> p40–41	creativity: word building	comparatives and superlatives	word stress in word families
<b>6C   6D</b> p42–43	extreme adjectives	present perfect + <i>for, since</i> and <i>yet</i>	intonation for expressing opinions
<b>REVIEW 5–6</b> p44–45			
<b>7A</b> p46–47	travel and tourism	first and second conditionals	contractions
<b>7B</b> p48–49	new experiences; the natural world	quantifiers	emphasising quantity
<b>7C   7D</b> p50–51	describing places	reflexive pronouns	sounding enthusiastic
<b>8A</b> p52–53	practical abilities; abilities: phrasal verbs	<i>can, could, be able to</i>	weak forms of <i>can, could</i> and <i>be able to</i>
<b>8B</b> p54–55	video collocations; technology 1	active and passive	emphasising important information
<b>8C   8D</b> p56–57	technical problems; technology 2	<i>-ing</i> form	contrastive stress
<b>REVIEW 7–8</b> p58–59			

<b>CUMULATIVE REVIEW 1–4</b> p60–61	<b>CUMULATIVE REVIEW 5–8</b> p62–63	<b>CUMULATIVE REVIEW 1–8</b> p64–67
<b>AUDIOSCRIPTS</b> p68–75	<b>ANSWER KEY</b> p76–96	

# Lesson 1A

**GRAMMAR** | present simple and present continuous; state verbs; adverbs of frequency

**VOCABULARY** | people and relationships; personality adjectives

**PRONUNCIATION** | connected speech: *do you*

## VOCABULARY

### people and relationships

#### 1 A Choose the correct word to complete the sentences.

- I'm going to ask my ..... if she can increase my pay.  
a colleague    b manager    c teammate
- I know a lot of people, but only a few of them are ..... friends.  
a big    b close    c near
- My ..... and I first met at a party last year, but we didn't become a couple until recently.  
a daughter    b parents    c partner
- I work for a small company, so I have few .....  
a colleagues    b neighbours    c teammates
- My ..... and I played well, but we lost the match.  
a partners    b teammates    c colleagues
- When I was very young at school, I spent my summers at my ..... farm in the country.  
a children's    b daughter's    c grandparent's

#### B Complete the sentences. Use a preposition and the correct form of the words in brackets.

I <sup>1</sup> ..... (be / friendly) with lots of people in the area, but only a few of them are close friends – old school friends and a couple of teammates from the football club.  
My grandparents are both really funny. I <sup>2</sup> ..... (look) to them because they can make anyone laugh.  
Unfortunately, I <sup>3</sup> ..... (not take) either of them. I'm more similar to my dad, who is very serious!  
My partner and I <sup>4</sup> ..... (get / well) when we first met, but these days we have a lot of arguments.  
I changed jobs last year, but I still <sup>5</sup> ..... (stay / touch) with my old colleagues.

### personality adjectives

#### 2 Complete the sentences with a personality adjective. The first letter is given.

- A r ..... person always does what they promise.
- A h ..... person does things to support other people.
- Someone who is e ..... -g ..... is quite relaxed about things.
- If a person is p ....., they don't mind waiting in a queue.
- Someone who doesn't hold doors open for people behind them is r .....
- A person who makes people laugh is f .....
- Someone who is k ..... is nice to other people.
- A person who often gives their time, gifts or money to other people is g .....
- Someone who loves telling other people what to do is b .....
- A t ..... person likes to put things away.

## GRAMMAR

### present simple and present continuous; state verbs; adverbs of frequency

#### 3 A The sentences below have a mistake. Choose the best option to correct the mistake.

- I usually sit in an office all day, but I work from home right now.  
a I worked    b I've worked    c I'm working
- I like tea, but I 'm preferring coffee these days.  
a I prefer    b I've preferred    c I preferred
- My car is needing a good clean at the moment.  
a needed    b needs    c has needed
- This week and next week, my friend and I travel around the country.  
a travelled    b have travelled    c are travelling

#### B Complete the email with the words in brackets in the present simple or present continuous form.

Hi Jen,

How are things? Life's not very exciting here but it's OK.

I <sup>1</sup> ..... (save) up to buy a flat at the moment, so

I <sup>2</sup> ..... (live) with my parents for a few months.

I spend most evenings with my parents. We <sup>3</sup> .....  
(watch) this really good series on TV at the moment.

We all <sup>4</sup> ..... (like) it a lot. My closest friend

<sup>5</sup> ..... (study) for a PhD right now, so she

<sup>6</sup> ..... (usually / be) busy, but we often get

together and play tennis. She <sup>7</sup> ....., (always / win) unfortunately. She <sup>8</sup> ..... (not know) it, but

I <sup>9</sup> ..... (not work) this week. So, I

<sup>10</sup> ..... (practise) tennis and maybe I'll win

for a change!

Love, Becky

## PRONUNCIATION

#### 4 1.01 | connected speech: *do you* | Listen and write the missing words.

- What time ..... get up in the mornings?
- How ..... to work?
- When ..... home in the evenings?
- ..... out at night?
- What ..... at the weekends?
- Who ..... the most time with?



## LISTENING

**5A** **1.02** | Listen to the introduction to a radio programme. Choose the correct topic.

- a who people spend time with at the weekends
- b people and activities that help with stress
- c new skills that people are trying to learn

**B** **1.03** | Listen to the next part of the programme. Which caller (1–5) is positive about the following things?

- a music .....
- b family .....
- c competing with friends .....
- d doing exercise .....
- e being outside .....

**C** **1.03** | Listen again. Are the statements True (T) or False (F)?

- 1 Caller one lives near an area of nature.
- 2 Caller one enjoys going outside after work in the winter.
- 3 Caller two only sings a few kinds of songs.
- 4 Caller two and his friends sing in a group together.
- 5 Caller three chooses the game he and his friends play.
- 6 Caller three's friends make him laugh.
- 7 Caller four's children look like her.
- 8 Caller four would like to have more sleep.
- 9 Caller five only runs when it's dry.
- 10 Caller five runs at the end of every day.

**6** **1.04** | Listen and write what you hear. You will hear the sentences only once.

- 1 .....
- 2 .....
- 3 .....
- 4 .....



## WRITING

### a personal profile

**7A** Complete the online profile with the linking phrases in the box.

also as well as because for example too

#### About me ...



My name's Jess Arnold and I'm a science student at the University of Leeds. You can often find me looking at the night sky <sup>1</sup> ..... I believe there is so much to discover about space, <sup>2</sup> ..... our own planet.

I was born in a town near Leeds. My dad first got me interested in space when he took me out to look at the stars one night. I was five. I often follow the activities of different space agencies online and I read anything I can about the International Space Station, <sup>3</sup> ..... I'm currently writing a blog and I'm <sup>4</sup> ..... starting a video channel for kids, with videos on different topics, <sup>5</sup> ..... about why stars die out.

If you love space and want to get in touch, contact me at [JArnold93@email.me](mailto:JArnold93@email.me).

**B** Number the topics in the order that you read about them in the profile.

Current projects .....

Job/Studies .....

Name .....

Regular activities .....

Home town .....

Personal beliefs .....

**8** Imagine you are Jed Nowak. Write your personal profile. Write 100–140 words.

- Use the notes below.
  - Use the profile in Ex 7A to help you.
  - Include linking phrases.
  - Start your profile with *My name's Jed Nowak ...*
- Jed Nowak / musician / band called *Honest Truth* / believes music brings people together / thinks music makes people happy / thinks the world is a better place with music
- grew up in Warsaw / moved to the UK when 12 / started playing guitar at school aged 14 / not very good at first / loved it / worked hard to become better / started the band with friends aged 17 / rock music his favourite / likes hip hop, rap, classical – all kinds / wants to get a contract with record company / wants people to listen to their music / band has a video channel – HonestTruthMusic



# Lesson 1B

GRAMMAR | verb patterns

VOCABULARY | jobs; work

PRONUNCIATION | syllable stress

## VOCABULARY

### jobs; work

- 1 Match the people and their skills (1–8) with the jobs in the box.

chef financial consultant gardener journalist  
mechanic musician plumber shop assistant

- 1 James loves cars and fixing things. ....
- 2 Anna enjoys repairing things in the home that use water. ....
- 3 Harley is good at growing plants. ....
- 4 Theo has a good understanding of taste and enjoys cooking. ....
- 5 Billie is a guitar player in a band. ....
- 6 Maria is a very good writer. ....
- 7 Martina enjoys maths and is good with numbers. ....
- 8 Jon is good at helping customers. ....

- 2A Complete the conversation with one word in each gap. The first letter is given.

A: What do you do?

B: I'm <sup>1</sup>o\_\_\_\_\_ of w\_\_\_\_\_ at the moment, but I'm a <sup>2</sup>v\_\_\_\_\_ at a charity shop while I look for a job. It's not <sup>3</sup>f\_\_\_\_\_ -t\_\_\_\_\_. It's just a few hours a week and of course I don't get any <sup>4</sup>w\_\_\_\_\_, but I've got some money saved and I enjoy the work. How about you?

A: I'm a financial consultant. I'm <sup>5</sup>r\_\_\_\_\_ for helping people make decisions about their money. I had a <sup>6</sup>c\_\_\_\_\_ as a model for a while, but I decided that I wanted to work with numbers rather than fashion designers! It's a more enjoyable <sup>7</sup>p\_\_\_\_\_ for me. I studied <sup>8</sup>p\_\_\_\_\_ -t\_\_\_\_\_ while I was a model so I could get the <sup>9</sup>q\_\_\_\_\_ that I needed. Now I <sup>10</sup>r\_\_\_\_\_ my own business from home.

- B Choose the correct word or phrase to complete the sentences.

- 1 My job is ..... – I work sixteen hours a week.  
a out of work    b part-time    c responsible
- 2 We get paid our ..... every Friday, but I don't think we get paid enough!  
a wages    b qualifications    c career
- 3 I'm ..... for managing the shop.  
a full-time    b responsible    c out of work
- 4 The teaching ..... needs positive, patient and kind teachers.  
a profession    b qualification    c career
- 5 You need college ..... to be a plumber.  
a volunteers    b wages    c qualifications
- 6 Alex is ..... at the moment, but hopefully he'll have a job soon.  
a full-time    b responsible    c out of work

## PRONUNCIATION

- 3 syllable stress | Choose the stressed syllable in each of the words.

- |              |              |            |
|--------------|--------------|------------|
| 1 assistant  | 3 financial  | 5 mechanic |
| 2 consultant | 4 journalist | 6 musician |

## GRAMMAR

### verb patterns

- 4A Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

- 1 I'm interested in ..... (learn) Chinese.
- 2 ..... (work) at night can be really tiring.
- 3 Before ..... (start) university, I worked abroad for two months.
- 4 I've decided ..... (get) a pet.
- 5 I can't imagine ..... (live) in a huge house.
- 6 We'd like ..... (have) the pasta, please.
- 7 I miss ..... (see) my friend now he's moved to a different city.
- 8 ..... (hear) the news has made me feel sad.

- B Choose the correct word or phrase to complete the sentences.

- 1 We ..... see you soon.  
a hoping to    b hope    c hope to
- 2 I promise ..... all the dishes if you cook.  
a to clean    b cleaning    c clean
- 3 After ..... the first page of this book, I don't think it's for me.  
a read    b to read    c reading
- 4 I try to avoid ..... anything that I don't enjoy.  
a do    b doing    c to do
- 5 Tom and Mike have decided ..... a boat.  
a buying    b to buy    c buy
- 6 Please stop ..... that loud noise!  
a make    b to make    c making

- C Complete the article with the correct form of the verbs in the box.

be do (x2) have help relax see teach

When we agree <sup>1</sup>..... volunteer work, it's not just about <sup>2</sup>..... other people, it's about making ourselves feel better, too. That's because when we support others and they succeed, we get a sense of satisfaction. Imagine <sup>3</sup>..... the smile of a child when they score a goal, or create a piece of art. Of course, you don't have to be good at <sup>4</sup>..... art or sport, or have special qualifications. There are lots of volunteering jobs. Whatever you decide <sup>5</sup>....., you should expect <sup>6</sup>..... busy. Plan <sup>7</sup>..... some free time and spend that time <sup>8</sup>......

## READING

**5A** Read the title of the article. Then choose the correct topic.

- a a charity that organises free drinks for people in need
- b a scientist's recipe for a perfect cup of coffee
- c a coffee drink that tastes different



# Helping people, one cup of coffee at a time

When John M. Sweeney heard about an Italian activity called *caffé sospeso*, it gave him an idea that soon travelled the world. *Caffé sospeso* was once **popular** in Naples. Working class people who had good luck bought two coffees instead of one. They gave the second coffee to someone who didn't have enough money to buy their own coffee that day. This was most popular in the late 1800s and mid-1900s, but a few businesses in Naples started doing it again in 2010. A year later, the local government decided to call 10 December 'Caffé Sospeso Day'.

Sweeney **found out** about *caffé sospeso* two years later and believed that more people should know about it. So, in 2013, he started a Facebook page called *Suspended Coffees* from his home in Ireland. He **suggested** that people pay for two coffees when they next go into a café and give one coffee to someone in need. Within just a few hours, 20,000 people liked his page. At the end of the first year, over a quarter of a million people were **following** the page, and 1,400 cafés around the world joined in.

The idea has now become popular all over the world. You can find cafés which let people buy coffees for other people in Europe, America, Africa, Asia and Australia. The world's biggest café company is doing it, too. So, who exactly can ask for a free coffee? Well, the idea is anyone can. It can be a person who is living on

the streets, a businessperson who has just lost their job and is worried about paying their bills, a parent who spends everything they have on their children, or someone who is just having a **horrible** day and wants to feel better. The idea behind *Suspended Coffees* is that people are usually **honest**, so when someone asks for a coffee, they get one. They don't have to explain why, so no one should feel nervous about asking.

So, *caffé sospeso* isn't just something that was popular in Italy in the past. It's something that is popular around the world, and helps to make people's lives a little better.



**B** Match the gaps in the sentences (1–6) with the types of information that are missing (a–f).

- 1 The idea of *caffé sospeso* started in \_\_\_\_\_, Italy.
- 2 Years later, *caffé sospeso* became popular again in Italy in \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 People celebrate this tradition in the second week of \_\_\_\_\_ each year.
- 4 John M. Sweeney shared information about *caffé sospeso* on \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_ cafés became part of the 'Suspended Coffees' programme during the first year.
- 6 One example of someone who might get a free coffee is a \_\_\_\_\_ who spends all their money on their children.

- |                  |                    |
|------------------|--------------------|
| a a number       | d a type of person |
| b an online site | e a year           |
| c a city         | f a month          |

**C** Complete the sentences in Ex 5B with one word or number from the article.

**D** Match the meanings (1–6) with a word or phrase in bold in the article.

- 1 gave an idea about how to do something \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 very bad \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 choosing to get messages from a social media page \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 giving true information \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 learnt \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 liked by lots of people \_\_\_\_\_

# Lesson 1C

HOW TO ... | start and end a conversation; keep a conversation going

VOCABULARY | conversation topics

PRONUNCIATION | rhythm and intonation

## VOCABULARY

### conversation topics

**1 A** Complete the tips for talking to strangers with the topics in the box. You do not need two of the topics.

clothes and fashion food and eating out  
hobbies and free time activities holiday experiences  
the news politics sport or music event  
the weather work or studies

## Making small talk

Talking to people we've only just met can be enjoyable, but it can also be difficult. One thing that we all have in common is <sup>1</sup> ..... so an easy way to start a conversation is to say what a lovely, warm or cold day it is. Of course, this only works if you live in a country where there are seasons. If not, try talking about something that's happened recently. It could be a national <sup>2</sup> ..... like a football match or a festival. You might want to avoid talking about <sup>3</sup> ..... because the stories we read and see every day can often be sad. It's also best not to discuss <sup>4</sup> ..... with someone you've just met. People have different ideas on how to run the country and it might start an argument. You could ask if the person can recommend any good restaurants. This can lead to a discussion about <sup>5</sup> ..... I'm sure you'll both have lots to say about that. You could also say you like what someone's wearing, to bring in <sup>6</sup> ..... but that's a topic you should take care with, too. People don't always want to focus on how they look. Perhaps a safer option is to ask what a person does. Then you can chat about your <sup>7</sup> ..... Most of us have a lot to say about that.

**B** Complete the conversation using words from the box.

clothes eating event experiences hobbies  
news studies weather

A: What did you talk to Dave about?

B: He told me about his university <sup>1</sup> ..... in business, a music <sup>2</sup> ..... he went to, his recent holiday <sup>3</sup> ..... abroad, his thoughts about the sports <sup>4</sup> ..... stories today, and why the <sup>5</sup> ..... is so wet at the moment.

A: More listening than talking, then!

## How to ...

### start and end a conversation; keep a conversation going

**2 A** **1.05** | Listen to three conversations. Match the conversations (1–3) with the situations (a–c).

- a someone wants a new job
- b someone wants to watch a presentation
- c the speakers know each other

**B** **1.06** | Match the sentence halves. Then listen to conversation 1 again and check.

- |                           |                  |
|---------------------------|------------------|
| 1 Excuse me, do you mind  | a at all.        |
| 2 No, not                 | b meet you.      |
| 3 Is it your first        | c to go.         |
| 4 Help                    | d if I sit here? |
| 5 I'm sorry, but I've got | e yourself.      |
| 6 Nice to                 | f time here?     |

## PRONUNCIATION

**3** **1.07** | **rhythm and intonation** | Listen and underline the syllable that has the main stress in each sentence.

- |                       |                   |
|-----------------------|-------------------|
| 1 See you later.      | 4 Be my guest.    |
| 2 Go ahead.           | 5 I've got to go. |
| 3 Enjoy your weekend. | 6 No problem.     |

## SPEAKING

**4 A** Complete the conversation with one word in each gap.

A: Excuse me, is <sup>1</sup> ..... sitting here?

B: No, go <sup>2</sup> .....

A: It's a lovely morning, <sup>3</sup> ..... it?

B: Beautiful!

A: Are you here for the interview?

B: Yes. How <sup>4</sup> ..... you?

A: I'm here for the interview too. What time's yours?

B: Ten thirty. I'm early. <sup>5</sup> ..... about yours?

A: Mine's at eleven. I'm Matt, by the <sup>6</sup> .....

B: I'm Carrie. Nice to <sup>7</sup> ..... you.

A: Oh ... the person on reception just called your name.

B: Oh yes, thanks. I've <sup>8</sup> ..... to go.

A: Good luck!

**B** **1.08** | Listen and check.

**C** **1.09** | You are B in the conversation in Ex 4A. Listen and speak after the beep. Record the conversation if you can.

**D** Listen to your recording and compare it to the model in Ex 4B.





# Lesson 1D

GRAMMAR | modifiers

LISTENING | an interview about lifestyle

## GRAMMAR

### modifiers

**1 A** Choose the correct word or phrase to complete the sentences.

- My life is ..... boring these days.  
a quite a      b fairly      c a lot of
- I'd love to have ..... free time during the week.  
a a lot more      b relatively      c quite a
- We're all ..... busy at the moment.  
a quite      b quite a      c quite a lot
- I live in a ..... cheap flat close to here.  
a bit more      b quite a      c relatively
- Alex is ..... happy person most of the time.  
a quite an      b quite      c quite a
- I'd like to spend ..... more time outdoors, but not much more.  
a a lot of      b a bit      c a lot less

**B** Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- a / got / family / I've / big / quite
- time / my friends / spend / I / less / now / lot / a / with
- I'd / relaxed / bit / like / a / to / be / more
- alternative / quite / We / an / lifestyle / have
- lot / to do / I / these days / more / have / a / work
- with / want / a house / more / lot / We / space / a

**C** Complete the sentences with the phrases in the box.

a bit more   a lot less   pretty good   quite  
quite a   quite an

- Being a journalist can be ..... difficult job.
- I'd like to spend ..... time doing boring housework. I hate it!
- Ahmed is ..... interesting person.
- I think we need to think about this ..... before we make a decision.
- This food you've made is ..... .
- The final level of this game is ..... hard.

## LISTENING

**2** **1.10** | Listen to the recording. Choose the words in the text that are different from what you hear.

A 'tiny house' is the name for a very small home that is becoming popular these days. These homes are probably not much bigger than one room in your home, but they usually include a dining room, kitchen, bathroom and bedroom. One reason that people choose to live in such homes is because they're cheap to rent. Often, they're on wheels, so you can move them from one place to another easily. This means that you can easily put them next to a house, or at the end of a garden if you don't own any land.



**3 A** **1.11** | Listen to a podcast about living in a tiny house. Choose the correct word to complete the sentence.

The owner's experience is mostly **positive** / **negative**.

**B** **1.11** | Listen again and choose the correct options.

- Why did Adele buy a tiny home?  
a to live an easy life  
b to stop working long hours  
c to own her own home
- What has surprised Adele about living in a tiny home?  
a the number of things she owns  
b the cheap cost of energy  
c the amount of space in the rooms
- What does Adele say about building her home?  
a A company built her home.  
b She was unhappy with the home at first.  
c Adele built the home herself.
- What does Adele say is the best thing about her tiny house?  
a She has a fantastic bathroom.  
b It's easy to keep nice and tidy.  
c Living there is very comfortable.
- What does Adele not like about her home?  
a She needs more space for her things.  
b She would like a bigger garden.  
c She worries that she'll have to move.
- What happens when Adele wants time away from her partner?  
a She goes into the bathroom.  
b She spends time outside.  
c She goes to a friend's house.



# Lesson 2A

GRAMMAR | narrative tenses

VOCABULARY | adjectives for feelings; -ed/-ing adjectives

PRONUNCIATION | weak forms of: was, were and had

## VOCABULARY

### adjectives for feelings; -ed/-ing adjectives

1 A Choose the correct adjectives.

 **Kat**

As you can see from this really <sup>1</sup>**embarrassed** / **embarrassing** photo, my surprise birthday party was very <sup>2</sup>**surprised** / **surprising**! I was <sup>3</sup>**exciting** / **excited** to see you all.



 **Rich**


I was <sup>4</sup>**disappointed** / **disappointing** that I couldn't be there. I asked my boss for the evening off, but he said no. He can be <sup>5</sup>**annoyed** / **annoying** like that! It was a really quiet and <sup>6</sup>**boring** / **bored** night of work, too. I hope you all had a great time.

 **Kat**

We did! Inna said she was <sup>7</sup>**frightened** / **frightening** for weeks that she was going to say something. It's <sup>8</sup>**amazed** / **amazing** that she didn't because she can't usually keep a secret!

B Complete the adjectives in the sentences.

- I was w ..... that I'd give a bad presentation, but I didn't.
- Your home is so nice. I'm j ..... l .....
- I want to go to bed. I'm s ..... p .....
- This is a s ..... y idea that won't work at all.
- Felipe was really u ..... s ..... when he lost his job.
- Stay c ..... m everyone. It's not a real fire alarm.
- I was n ..... s before the exam, but once it started, I relaxed.
- I'm not just scared. I'm t ..... r ..... !
- Lola's worked so hard on her singing. You must be really p ..... u ..... of her.
- I didn't sleep well. I'm e ..... h .....

C  Complete the conversation using words from the box.

angry bored calm exhausted nervous proud  
silly terrified

Mari: How was your drama competition?


Adi: Good. I was scared at first – <sup>1</sup> ..... in fact! But once we started, I wasn't <sup>2</sup> ..... I felt relaxed.

Mari: Great! Were you tired after?

Adi: Yes, <sup>3</sup> .....! My group didn't win, but I wasn't <sup>4</sup> ..... We did well and I'm <sup>5</sup> ..... of that.

## GRAMMAR

### narrative tenses


2 A  Choose the correct word or phrase to complete the sentences.

- I didn't go out last night because I ..... out the night before.  
a go b was being c 'd been
- When we got to the hotel, we ..... that there was a problem with our room.  
a found b had found c were finding
- I stopped and had a chat with Naomi while I ..... in town.  
a shopped b had shopped c was shopping
- I couldn't call you because ..... my phone at home.  
a I'd left b I've left c I was leaving
- We ..... in a tent in the middle of a field when the storm hit.  
a had slept b were sleeping c slept
- When Jack got to college, he realised that he ..... to bring his laptop.  
a forgot b was forgetting c had forgotten

B Complete the text with the past simple, past continuous or past perfect simple form of the verbs in brackets.

About a year ago, I <sup>1</sup> ..... (sit) at home watching TV when the doorbell rang. It was a neighbour to say that my car had a flat tyre. I went outside and <sup>2</sup> ..... (see) he was right. Someone <sup>3</sup> ..... (put) a hole in the tyre during the night. I had it fixed, but when I got up a few mornings later, I discovered it <sup>4</sup> ..... (happen) again, and then a third time. I was really angry and wanted to know who <sup>5</sup> ..... (do) it each time. So, I got a security company to put some cameras on the side of my house. A few mornings later, the tyre was flat again so I <sup>6</sup> ..... (watch) the video the camera <sup>7</sup> ..... (record) from the night before. Do you know what I found out while I <sup>8</sup> ..... (do) my research? It wasn't a person who <sup>9</sup> ..... (do) all the damage. It was a neighbour's dog. I <sup>10</sup> ..... (not can) believe it!


## PRONUNCIATION

3  2.01 | weak forms of: was, were and had | Listen and write the word you hear in each sentence: was, were or had.


- |         |         |
|---------|---------|
| 1 ..... | 4 ..... |
| 2 ..... | 5 ..... |
| 3 ..... | 6 ..... |



## LISTENING

**4A**  **2.02** | Listen to a man called Richie telling a story about the time he became famous. Number the events (a–f) in the order they happen.

- a Strangers came to visit Richie.
- b People became interested in a different meme.
- c Richie had an accident.
- d People shared a photo of Richie.
- e People shouted at Richie in the street.
- f Richie's manager took a photo of him.

**B**  **2.02** | Listen again. Choose the correct option (a–c) to complete the sentences.

- 1 The accident happened because
  - a Richie held the glasses with one hand.
  - b a colleague of Richie wasn't careful.
  - c a customer moved in front of Richie.
- 2 After dropping the drinks, Richie felt
  - a annoyed by what a customer did.
  - b embarrassed about his poor skills.
  - c unhappy about the mess he had made.
- 3 When Richie's photo was seen by a lot of people, he was
  - a surprised by the interest.
  - b upset that he looked silly.
  - c angry about his boss's actions.
- 4 When people came to see Richie at the restaurant, his boss was
  - a disappointed that the visitors didn't spend any money.
  - b pleased at the increase in interest in Richie's photo.
  - c worried that Richie would leave his job.
- 5 The whole experience made Richie feel
  - a sad because of the bad things that people said about him.
  - b glad that people recognised him in the street.
  - c happy that he had had the experience.

**C**  **2.03** | Listen and complete the sentences with one word in each gap.

- 1 A few years ....., I was working in a restaurant.
- 2 ..... I was walking to the table with the drinks, another waiter pushed into me.
- 3 One glass fell over and it pushed another glass over ... and ..... all the glasses were falling on the floor.
- 4 A couple of hours ....., my manager showed me a photo he'd taken on his phone.
- 5 ..... just a few hours, 20,000 people had shared the image.
- 6 The ..... day, people came into the restaurant to get a photo with me.

## WRITING

### a personal story

**5A** Choose the correct linking phrases.

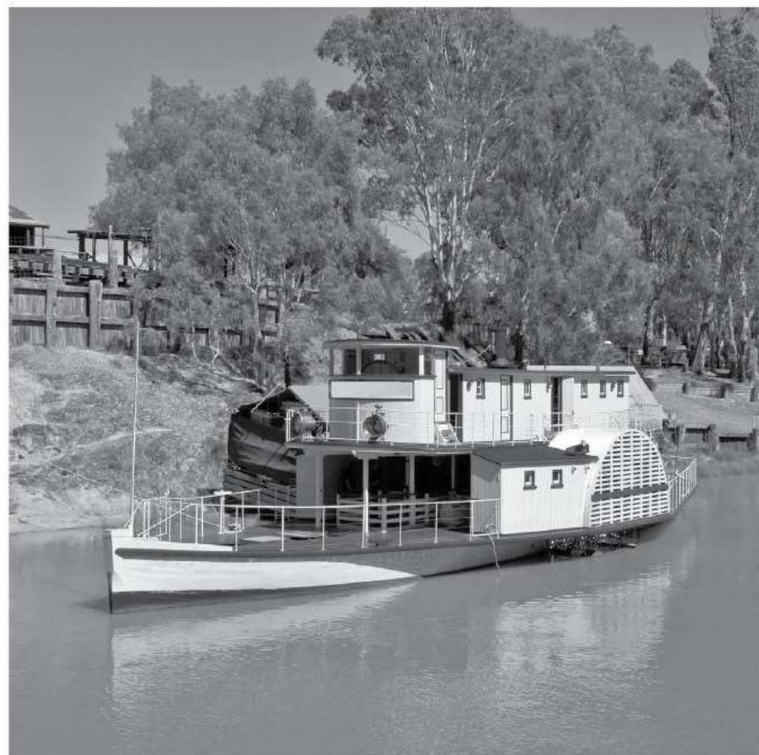
- a **After that / While** we were looking at the view on our right, the boat suddenly hit a rock under the water and turned on its side.
- b **As soon as / By the time** I got to the side of the river, I was exhausted and lay on the ground for a few seconds before I checked everyone else.
- c At first, I froze. **After that, / In the end**, I started swimming like crazy.
- d **One day, / While** we were travelling to our next destination by boat.
- e Some people needed help to get out of the water, but **by the time / in the end**, everyone was safe.
- f **As soon as / While** it happened, we all fell into the water.
- g **After that / When** we had all calmed down from our terrible experience, someone told us the river was full of crocodiles. We decided to travel the rest of the way by bus.

**B** Put the events in Ex 5A in the correct order (1–7).

**6A** You are going to write a story about a problem on a journey. Answer the questions with your own ideas.

- Who is the story about? Where was this person?
- Where was the person travelling to? How?
- What happened?
- What did the person do?
- How did the person feel?
- What happened at the end of the story?

**B** Write your story in 100–140 words. Use linking phrases from Ex 5A.



# Lesson 2B

GRAMMAR | past simple and present perfect

VOCABULARY | story words; types of film

PRONUNCIATION | contracted *have* in the present perfect

## VOCABULARY

### story words

1 A Complete the conversation with the words in the box.

characters ending hero performances  
plots show

A: I saw a good TV <sup>1</sup> ..... last night.

B: What was it about?

A: It was a drama. The <sup>2</sup> ..... was a police boss who was trying to find out who'd stolen some money.

B: What were the <sup>3</sup> ..... like? I hate bad acting.

A: They were good. The <sup>4</sup> ..... were interesting, too. We learnt something about the personal lives of all the officers in the team. I only saw the first episode, but it has a good story. It was different from the <sup>5</sup> ..... of other crime dramas, which usually tell the same type of story. The first episode had a surprising <sup>6</sup> ....., too. I really want to know what happens next!

B Choose the correct word to complete the sentences.

- 1 My grandad used to read me old **fairytale** / **plots** / **performances** when I was a child.
- 2 A good **ending** / **storyteller** / **TV show** keeps listeners interested from beginning to end.
- 3 The **fairytale** / **performance** / **plot** in the film had some different events to the one in the book.
- 4 There aren't many films where the **ending** / **hero** / **plot** dies, but this one did.
- 5 The film was really good until the **ending** / **hero** / **storyteller**, when it became really silly.

### types of film

2 Complete the descriptions with the correct types of film. The first letter is given.

- 1 There was no silly love story and I laughed all the way through. c.....
- 2 It was full of interesting facts about the environment and how we need to look after it. d.....
- 3 It was the same old story. Two people meet, fall in love and do silly things. r..... c.....
- 4 The actor looked just like the real-life woman that she played. b.....
- 5 It was full of guns, fights and fast cars. Boring! a..... f.....
- 6 It wasn't true, but it was a serious story about the relationship between a mother and her son. d.....
- 7 A man had disappeared and no one knew where he was. m.....
- 8 A couple travelled around the world searching for some secret gold. a..... f.....

## GRAMMAR

### past simple and present perfect

3 A The sentences below have a mistake. Choose the best option to correct the mistake.

- 1 We only walk one kilometre today, but the day isn't finished so we have time to do more.  
a We only walked  
b We're only walking  
c We've only walked
- 2 I'm never seeing anything as beautiful as this view.  
a I've never seen  
b I never saw  
c I was never seeing
- 3 I'd turned the heating up last night, but it's still very cold this morning.  
a I turned  
b I was turning  
c I've turned
- 4 Eri and Pete move to a new flat down the road, so they're our neighbours now.  
a were moving  
b have moved  
c had moved

B Complete the blog post with the verbs in brackets in the past simple or present perfect form.

### A life full of films

I love films. I

<sup>1</sup> ..... (see) over a thousand in my lifetime.

Some <sup>2</sup> .....

(be) pretty bad, but I <sup>3</sup> ..... (not see) a film that I hated. I watch most films online, but I enjoy the cinema, too. Last month, I <sup>4</sup> ..... (go) seven times. I still remember the first time I <sup>5</sup> ..... (visit) a cinema. My dad <sup>6</sup> ..... (take) me to see an animation when I was four. I <sup>7</sup> ..... (feel) very excited. I

<sup>8</sup> ..... (sit) in a cinema seat hundreds of times during my life, but I still get excited like that first time.



## PRONUNCIATION

4 2.04 | contracted **have** in the present perfect | Listen and write what you hear. Include contracted forms where appropriate.

- 1 .....
- 2 .....
- 3 .....



## READING

**5A** Read the title of the article. Choose three things that the article includes.

- 1 where to get story ideas from
- 2 the richest writers in the world
- 3 popular films at the moment
- 4 how to plan a story
- 5 ways to write an ending
- 6 the best poems ever written

**B** Read the article. Match the headings (a–e) with the paragraphs (1–5).

- a Checking your work
- b Decide how the story begins and finishes
- c It's all in the planning
- d Adding details
- e Getting ideas

**C** Read the article again. Are the statements True (T) or False (F)?

- 1 You should use the plots from other people's stories.
- 2 Your story should only come from things you have experienced in your life.
- 3 It's important to begin by writing down as many details as possible.
- 4 You can sometimes imagine a story well when you draw it.
- 5 It can be helpful to start with the story ending, and then plan the story beginning.
- 6 Noting down lots of points helps you to stop describing a character differently during a story.
- 7 It's important to spend more time on the story ending than the beginning.
- 8 Every reader enjoys stories more when the endings are open.
- 9 The only time you should focus on the grammar is when you read it the first time.
- 10 It's not enough to read your story twice when checking it.

# Steps for writing a good story

Not everyone is an amazing writer, but we can all write interesting stories if we follow a few simple steps.

- 1 It's not a good idea to copy other people's stories, but it can be useful to think about why you liked a story when you think of your own. Was it the plot? The characters? How it made you feel? Or did the ending surprise you? Don't just use your own experiences to imagine a story. Look at and listen carefully to the things around you, too. Watch people, listen to bits of their conversations and read the news.
- 2 Now you've got an idea, make a plan. Some people start noting down a lot of details from the start, but it's best to write just a few important things such as who, where, when, what and how. Making some simple pictures of the things or people in your story can help you to see it more clearly in your mind. It can often help to begin with the ending of your story and then go back to the start, too.
- 3 Now you can think about smaller pieces of information in your story. What do the places look like? What are the characters like? What connects them all? What happens to them and when? Keep a note of everything so you don't forget it when writing. It's not good if the hero has black hair at the start and brown hair at the end!
- 4 The ending of a story might be what people remember, but it's the start that gets people interested, so this is just as important and often takes just as much time to write. When you write your ending, think about how you want people to feel. For example, should they be terrified and then calm, or calm and then terrified? Remember you don't have to tell the reader everything. An open ending lets the reader imagine what happened. Not everyone likes this kind of ending, though.
- 5 Always leave time to go back and read your story. Read it to make sure everything is clear, and everything you say is important. Then, read it again and think about the language you have used. Are there better words? Or any errors to correct? And don't just read your story twice. Come back to it a few days later and read it again.

# Lesson 2C

HOW TO ... | apologise and give reasons

VOCABULARY | collocations with *get* and *make*

PRONUNCIATION | intonation for apologising

## VOCABULARY

### collocations with *get* and *make*

**1 A** Complete the excuses with *get* or *make* in the correct form.

- 1 So sorry I'm late. I ..... lost on the way here.
- 2 I need to ..... an urgent phone call.
- 3 I thought you didn't want to go out, so I ..... other plans.
- 4 Sorry I'm late. I ..... held up by the traffic.
- 5 My friends have ..... a mess in here and I haven't tidied it up yet. Sorry.
- 6 Sorry I wasn't on time. I ..... off at the wrong train stop!
- 7 Do you have to work tomorrow? We had ..... plans to go out for the day.

**B** Complete the conversation using words from the box.

best did got held made mistake stopped wrong

A: What an awful morning!

B: Why?

A: Firstly, my daughter <sup>1</sup> ..... a terrible mess. Then the bus got <sup>2</sup> ..... up in traffic.

B: Oh dear!

A: Then I made a <sup>3</sup> ..... and <sup>4</sup> ..... off at the wrong bus stop.

B: Anything else?

A: Yes. I'd got the <sup>5</sup> ..... day for the meeting. It's tomorrow.

## How to ...

### apologise and give reasons

**2 A** **2.05** | Listen to the conversations and choose the correct words.

#### Conversation 1

- 1 Arin is late because his **bus** / **train** was held up.
- 2 Mary says that it **is** / **isn't** fine that Arin is late.
- 3 Mr Hill received **20** / **200** boxes of paper.
- 4 Mary says that it **is** / **isn't** a problem about the mistake.

#### Conversation 2

- 5 Mr Hill **accepts** / **doesn't accept** Arin's apology.
- 6 Mr Hill **is** / **isn't** happy with Arin's offer to collect the paper.
- 7 Mr Hill explains that the number of office chairs that arrived **was** / **wasn't** correct.
- 8 Arin says he will **phone** / **visit** Mr Hill later.

**B** **2.05** | Complete the sentences with one word in each gap. The first letter is given. Listen again and check.

- 1 I a ..... My train was d .....
- 2 I'm r ..... sorry. I think that was my f .....
- 3 Sorry to k ..... you waiting.
- 4 I made a m ..... when I put the information into the computer.
- 5 S ..... about that.
- 6 N ..... mind. These things happen.
- 7 Let me check to see what happened ... I'll call you b .....

## PRONUNCIATION

**3** **2.06** | intonation for apologising | Listen to two speakers making the same apology. Which speaker uses the correct intonation each time: a or b?

- |                 |                 |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1 Speaker ..... | 3 Speaker ..... |
| 2 Speaker ..... | 4 Speaker ..... |

## SPEAKING

**4 A** Complete the phone conversation between a professor (P) and a student (S) with phrases from the box.

apologise as soon as possible my fault  
no problem sorry about that traffic's terrible

P: Hello, is that Alex?

S: Yes, it is.

P: It's Professor Brown. You're late to our meeting.

S: Yes, <sup>1</sup> ..... The <sup>2</sup> ..... this morning and the bus isn't moving.

P: OK, <sup>3</sup> ..... We can talk on the phone. You haven't sent your project to me.

S: I <sup>4</sup> ..... It's <sup>5</sup> ..... I got the wrong date. I thought we had to send it by the 15th, not the 5th.

P: Well, never mind. You can have a few more days.

S: That would be great thank you.

P: Come to my office when you get here and we can agree on the date.

S: I'll be there <sup>6</sup> .....

P: Great. See you soon.

**B** **2.07** | Listen and check.

**C** **2.08** | You are the student in the conversation in Ex 4A. Listen and speak after the beep. Record the conversation if you can.

**D** Listen to your recording and compare it to the model in Ex 4B.



# Lesson 2D

GRAMMAR | prepositions of time  
READING | places that have changed a lot

## GRAMMAR

### prepositions of time

**1 A** The sentences below have a mistake. Choose the best option to correct the mistake.

- I didn't have time to have lunch until the break.  
a between      b on      c during
- What are you going to do in New Year's Day?  
a between      b on      c at
- I'll wait here before you're ready to go and then we can leave together.  
a until      b after      c during
- We worked together during 2019 and 2021.  
a on      b between      c until

**B** Complete the sentences with a preposition of time.

- Amy shared a flat with two of her friends from 2018 ..... last year.
- I like to eat ice cream ..... a film.
- I'll see you ..... about three hours' time.
- Let's clean the kitchen ..... we've eaten dinner, or our food will go cold.
- I was born ..... the 2000s.
- We need to go to the bank ..... we go shopping so we have some money to spend.

## READING

**2 A** Read the article. Decide which place each sentence is about: Shanghai (S), the Aral Sea (A) or Houtouwan (H).

- Only a small number of people live in this area.
- The buildings are not the same as forty years ago.
- It's greener here than in the past.
- The size of this place changed because of farming.
- There are double the number of people there today compared to the early 2000s.
- Local people can do an activity here that they couldn't do a few years ago.
- The area and population are increasing a lot.

**B** Complete the information with numbers from the article.

- The population of the Houtouwan area in the early 1990s: .....
- The percentage of water compared with the past that is still in the Aral Sea today: .....
- How many metres high the first tall building in Shanghai was: .....
- How many millions of dollars it cost to get more water into the Aral Sea: .....
- The number of hours it takes to get to Houtouwan from Shanghai: .....
- The number of millions of people who live in Shanghai today: .....

## Three places that have changed a lot in the last forty years

### Shanghai, China

Look at photos of Shanghai in the 1980s and you'll see a very different city to the one that's there now. There were no tall buildings along the river – no famous view that tourists come to take photos of. In 1996, the 632-metre-high Oriental Pearl Tower opened and was the only tall building in the area. Now there are tall buildings all around it. It's not just the buildings that have changed. Shanghai's size has changed, too. In 1984, the city was around 308 km<sup>2</sup> in area size. Today it's over 6,200 km<sup>2</sup>. It has twice the population that it had around twenty years ago, with 26 million people, and is one of the fastest growing cities in the world.



### The Aral Sea

The Aral Sea once was one of the largest lakes in the world. When water from two rivers was pushed into different directions to help grow food, the lake became smaller. By the 2010s, the lake was so small that the fishing industry died. The lake is now just 10 percent of its past size, with some water in the north near Kazakhstan, and a little in the west. The part in the east near Uzbekistan is now a desert. A plan to make the lake bigger near Kazakhstan has been successful. This is both by stopping water from leaving and helping water to enter the lake. The plan has cost \$87m dollars, but fishing near the city of Aralsk is now possible again.

### Houtouwan, Shengshan Island, China

Off the coast of Shanghai is Shengshan Island, one of 400 islands in the area. On the island is the village of Houtouwan, which was once the home of over 2,000 people, but is now the home of just a few. People began leaving the village in the 1990s to look for work on other parts of the island. Today, their homes are still there, many with furniture still inside. However, nature is taking the village back. Plants are growing over and inside the buildings. That's why tourists take a three-hour journey from Shanghai to see this unusual place. And local people earn money by selling them water.



## GRAMMAR

- 1 Complete the conversation with the present simple or present continuous form of the verbs in brackets.

A: What do you do?

B: I'm a gardener. I <sup>1</sup> ..... (love) cooking, too.

A: Oh really? <sup>2</sup> ..... you ..... (grow) your own vegetables and cook with them?

B: No, but I <sup>3</sup> ..... (think) about doing that next year.

A: I <sup>4</sup> ..... (not grow) vegetables. I don't know how!


B: What do you do?

A: At the moment, I <sup>5</sup> ..... (learn) to be a plumber at college and I <sup>6</sup> ..... (work) part-time at a shop at the weekends, but being a plumber is what I <sup>7</sup> ..... (want) to do in the future.

- 2 Complete the sentences with the *-ing* or infinitive form of the verbs in the box.

clean come get have help walk

- 1 I miss ..... lots of free time, like I had as a child.  
 2 We'd love ..... and visit you next week.  
 3 I try to avoid ..... outside on my own in the dark.  
 4 ..... the house is really boring!  
 5 Shall we get some food before ..... the bus home?  
 6 Jack's agreed ..... us tidy the garden.

- 3  The sentences below have a mistake. Choose the best option to correct the mistake.

- 1 It's quite a lot hard to see without the light on.  
 a a lot      b pretty      c quite a  
 2 I'd like to practise my French quite often than I do at the moment.  
 a relatively      b a lot more      c a bit  
 3 We were all quite a pleased with the way we played during the match.  
 a fairly      b quite an      c a bit  
 4 The meal cost pretty less than we'd thought so we were happy!  
 a reasonably      b quite a      c quite a lot

- 4 Complete the text with the past simple, past continuous or past perfect form of the verbs in brackets.

When I <sup>1</sup> ..... (work) in Tokyo for a month last year, I met up with a colleague and we <sup>2</sup> ..... (go) out for lunch. Later, we <sup>3</sup> ..... (walk) back to the train station when I saw someone that I <sup>4</sup> ..... (know) at school. I couldn't believe it! We <sup>5</sup> ..... (not see) each other for a really long time, and now we were in the same street, in the same country on the other side of the world. I <sup>6</sup> ..... (be) really surprised!

- 5 Complete the college library sign with one preposition in each gap.

## Important notice

The library will close <sup>1</sup> ..... 24 June for the summer holidays. You have <sup>2</sup> ..... 5 p.m. on that day to return any books you have borrowed. We will close <sup>3</sup> ..... 6 p.m. <sup>4</sup> ..... returning your books, please check that you haven't left any papers or money inside them. You'd be surprised at what we find! If you want to borrow books <sup>5</sup> ..... the holidays, please use the city library.

Have a great summer. See you <sup>6</sup> ..... August when we open again (22 August).

- 6 For each question, write the correct answer. Write one word for each gap.

## Seven stories

How many stories do you think you <sup>1</sup> ..... heard in your lifetime? Hundreds? Thousands? Some people believe there are really only a few basic plots, and that these are repeated in all the stories we choose <sup>2</sup> ..... read, listen to or watch. <sup>3</sup> ..... the early 2000s, while author Christopher Booker <sup>4</sup> ..... doing research for a book on stories, he decided that there are just seven plots.

Booker suggests that one story is 'Rags to riches'. This is where the main character starts off poor and ends up rich. Another is 'The quest' where the hero goes on an adventure. If you <sup>5</sup> ..... reading a book at the moment, think about what type of story it is. You'll probably realise it's quite <sup>6</sup> ..... common one.





## VOCABULARY

### 7 Complete the text with words from the box.

characters ending TV shows hero plots storytellers

#### Are fairy tales important today?

Fairy tales have been around for hundreds of years, so are they still useful today? Yes, I think so, although they're not perfect. Some of the <sup>1</sup> ..... can be scary for children, especially when terrible things happen to the main <sup>2</sup> ..... But they teach children useful life lessons. For example, sometimes bad things happen to the <sup>3</sup> ..... of the story, but that person stays strong and later gets a happy <sup>4</sup> ..... This teaches children that bad things can happen to all of us, but good things happen too. Children can learn this lesson from films or <sup>5</sup> ..... but with fairy tales parents who read the story are the <sup>6</sup> .....

### 8 Choose the correct options (a-c) to complete the sentences in each pair. You do not need one of the options.

- 1 I'm a financial consultant for a company, but I want to run
  - a in a full-time job.
  - b my own business one day.
  - c out of work soon.
- 2 I tried to get here on time, but I got
  - a held up on the way.
  - b a mistake with the address.
  - c the traffic was slow.
- 3 I'm late because I made
  - a held up on the way.
  - b a mistake with the address.
  - c the traffic was slow.
- 4 I'm late because I made
  - a held up on the way.
  - b a mistake with the address.
  - c the traffic was slow.
- 5 I'm a head teacher, so I'm responsible
  - a for the care of all staff and students.
  - b up to some of the teachers.
  - c with a lot of the other students.
- 6 I like my school and really look
  - a for the care of all staff and students.
  - b up to some of the teachers.
  - c with a lot of the other students.
- 7 I'm close to my brother, but I don't get
  - a in touch with him by social media mostly.
  - b after my sister all that much.
  - c on very well with my sister.
- 8 My brother moved away, so I stay
  - a in touch with him by social media mostly.
  - b after my sister all that much.
  - c on very well with my sister.

### 9 Complete the definitions with one word in each gap. The first letter is given.

- 1 If you have a p..... - ..... job, you do not work the whole week.
- 2 If you do something silly and it makes you go red in the face, you feel e.....
- 3 A funny film about love is called a r..... comedy.
- 4 If you couldn't find your way to a place, you got l.....
- 5 If you have to call someone right now, you had to m..... an urgent phone call.
- 6 If you're really tired, you're e.....

### 10 A Match the sentence halves.

- 1 Let's ask the shop
- 2 You two are always talking about food
- 3 I saw quite a good TV
- 4 I hate being frightened so I never watch horror
- 5 I don't think that I take
- 6 It looks like Amanda and Julio are in
- a after either of my parents.
- b assistant to help us.
- c show yesterday evening.
- d films on TV or at the cinema.
- e or eating out!
- f love with each other.

### B Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

bossy career colleagues mechanic proud upset

- 1 My sister's a ..... and she helps me with all my car problems.
- 2 I'm sorry you were ..... about the argument.
- 3 I'd love to have a ..... in the fashion industry one day.
- 4 I usually go out with my ..... after work on a Friday.
- 5 Stop being so ..... and telling people what to do!
- 6 I'm really ..... of Max for doing so well in his exams.

### C Choose the correct words to complete the text.

#### How to make new friends

How do you make new friends these days? Do you sit on a park bench and start conversations about the <sup>1</sup>politics / weather / studies with strangers? Do you wait until you meet your friend's friends? Or go online?

Social media can make new friendships seem easy to make, but sometimes these sites are not <sup>2</sup>helpful / kind / polite for making new friends. How do we know that we'll <sup>3</sup>do / get / make on well with someone just from their profile and a few comments online? They might seem calm and <sup>4</sup>bossy / crazy / patient at first, but they might actually be <sup>5</sup>funny / rude / tidy and angry when we meet them.

Other ways to make friends include joining a club, or being a <sup>6</sup>career / profession / volunteer for a local charity. We can ask people we work with to go out somewhere, and maybe get to know their friends. And of course, we can be <sup>7</sup>bossy / friendly / tidy to strangers when we're in the park or at a bus stop as they might make a good friend. Just don't talk about what's happening in <sup>8</sup>politics / wages / weather in your country. That's never a good way to try to start a friendship!



# Lesson 3A

GRAMMAR | question forms

VOCABULARY | knowledge; verbs and nouns

PRONUNCIATION | stressed words in questions

## VOCABULARY

### knowledge

#### 1 Complete the text with the words in the box.

choice data general knowledge guess memory  
mind note down options score solve

### Better brain power!

- When you read or hear interesting facts, <sup>1</sup> ..... the information in a book or on your phone. Then, you can remember the facts and increase your <sup>2</sup> ..... of the world.
- If you want to <sup>3</sup> ..... a problem, but you can't think of how, look at all the <sup>4</sup> ..... you have and then stop thinking about it. When you focus on the problem later, your <sup>5</sup> ..... will often have an answer.
- If you see a word you don't know, <sup>6</sup> ..... the meaning. Use a dictionary to check.
- If you can make the <sup>7</sup> ..... between revising for two hours on one day, or revising for 20 minutes on several days, take the second of the two <sup>8</sup> ..... It helps the information to go into your long-term <sup>9</sup> .....
- When you get test results back, don't focus on the grade or <sup>10</sup> ..... Think about what you did well and what you didn't do so well. This will help you to do better in the future.

### verbs and nouns

#### 2A Complete the words.

- I need to memor ..... thirty new English words.
- I left my exam revis ..... until the last minute.
- My underst ..... of science is not very good.
- Have you found a sol ..... to the problem yet?
- Elena's know ..... of history is excellent.
- Practice tests are good prep ..... for a real exam.

#### B Choose the correct word to complete the sentences.

- I did a lot of **knowledge** / **memory** / **revision** before the exam, so I think it went well.
- The headteacher **knew** / **informed** / **prepared** us that the school was closing.
- Marina has a terrible **information** / **knowledge** / **memory** and forgets everything.
- I need to **inform** / **memorise** / **solve** all the information in this book for my science exam!
- I'm not sure if a business course was the best **choice** / **guess** / **knowledge** for me.
- If you don't know the answer, just have a **guess** / **preparation** / **solution**.

## GRAMMAR

### question forms

#### 3A Put the words in the correct order.

- music / to / What kind of / usually / you / listen / do ?
- about / told / the accident / Who / you ?
- you / for / What / looking / are ?
- have / you / done / What / about the problem ?
- the answer / What / to the question / you / gave ?
- talking / you all / about / are / What ?

#### B The sentences below have a mistake. Choose the best option to correct the mistake.

- Which student did they get the highest grade in?  
a got their    b get    c got
- What car you have bought?  
a car have you    b car has    c have you car
- Who write the song that's playing now?  
a did you write    b wrote    c write you
- Who does this coat belong?  
a belonged    b belong to    c belonged to

#### C Complete the conversation with the past simple form of the verbs in brackets. Add **you** if necessary


- A: <sup>1</sup> ..... (go) out last night?  
B: Yes, I went to the cinema.  
A: Oh right. What <sup>2</sup> ..... (see)?  
B: That new action film that's out.  
A: What <sup>3</sup> ..... (think of) of it?  
B: It was pretty good.  
A: I might go and see it. Who <sup>4</sup> ..... (go with)?  
B: A couple of friends. We got dinner before.  
A: Nice. Did <sup>5</sup> ..... (go to) that French café you like?  
B: No, we didn't. We went to an Italian place and had pizza, which I didn't have to pay for.  
A: Why not? Who <sup>6</sup> ..... (pay for) it?  
B: No one. The parents of one of my friends own the restaurant! What <sup>7</sup> ..... (do) last night?  
A: I chatted to Dan for about three hours.  
B: What <sup>8</sup> ..... (chat about) for all that time?  
A: Mostly about where you were, because you weren't answering our messages!

## PRONUNCIATION


#### 4 3.01 | stressed words in questions | Listen and underline the stressed words.

- Do you speak many languages?
- Where do you take your lessons?
- Does she drive you to work?
- How can I help you to feel better?
- What do you remember about our trip to Rome?
- Do you have any money I can borrow?


## LISTENING

**5A**  **3.02** | Listen to two people organising an online quiz. Number the things (a–e) in the order the speakers discuss them.

- a writing the quiz questions .....
- b size of each team .....
- c date of the quiz .....
- d topics for the quiz .....
- e time and length of the quiz .....

**B**  **3.02** | Listen to the conversation again. Choose the correct answers (a–c).

- 1 On what day do the speakers decide to hold the quiz?
  - a Saturday 1st
  - b Saturday 8th
  - c Sunday 9th
- 2 What time will the quiz be?
  - a 7 p.m.–9 p.m.
  - b 8 p.m.–9 p.m.
  - c 8 p.m.–9.30 p.m.
- 3 What is the highest number of people a team can have?
  - a four
  - b five
  - c six
- 4 Which of these topics will the speakers ask ten questions about first?
  - a general knowledge
  - b music
  - c sport
- 5 Who will write the quiz questions?
  - a the man
  - b the woman
  - c both the man and the woman
- 6 What did the man read about yesterday?
  - a a new department store
  - b a shop closing soon
  - c a terrible game of football

**C**  **3.03** | Complete the sentences for changing the conversation topic with one word in each gap. Then listen and check.

- 1 That ..... me, I'm meeting up with my old school friend Ryan next week.
- 2 OK, so ..... on to the next decision. What time shall we start and how long should we go on for?
- 3 By the ....., did you watch the match last night?
- 4 This is completely ..... topic, but I read yesterday that the department store in town is closing.

## WRITING

### an email asking for information

**6** Are the phrases formal (F) or informal (I)?

- 1 Thank you for your attention.
- 2 Dear Sir/Madam, ...
- 3 See you soon.
- 4 Could you tell me ... ?
- 5 All the best, ...
- 6 Can you tell me ... ?
- 7 I would like to know ...
- 8 Thanks!

**7A** Read the email asking for information about a college course. Choose the correct word to answer the questions.

- 1 Does it include contractions (e.g. *it's*)? **Yes / No**
- 2 Are there any short forms of words? **Yes / No**
- 3 Does it only include full sentences, with no words missing? **Yes / No**
- 4 Does it sound more like spoken English? **Yes / No**
- 5 Is it written in a formal style? **Yes / No**
- 6 Is the style correct for the person Matt is writing to? **Yes / No**

< Inbox

Hello,

I'm interested in applying to study art history at the college. I'd like to ask some questions first. Can you send me some info about the courses? I'd like to know more about them.

The advertisement doesn't give any details about the course. How long is it? When are the lessons? I'd like to know some other things too. What kinds of subjects do students study on the course? Is there an exam at the end?

It's important that I'm in a small class. How many students are there in a class?

Thanks very much! Hope to hear from you soon.

All the best,

Matt Bidford

**B** Rewrite the email in Ex 7A in a formal style. Write between 100–140 words.





# Lesson 3B

GRAMMAR | future plans and intentions

VOCABULARY | decisions

PRONUNCIATION | weak forms of *are you* and *going to*

## VOCABULARY

### decisions

#### 1 A Match the sentence halves.

- 1 I can't make up my
- 2 Let's select the
- 3 None of this article makes
- 4 When I bought my car, I don't think I made
- 5 Think about the advantages
- 6 Before we decided which flat to rent, we considered
- a the right choice. It's too big for me.
- b food for the wedding.
- c and disadvantages before you decide what to do.
- d mind about where to go tonight.
- e all the options available to us.
- f sense to me.

#### B Choose the correct word to complete the sentences.

- 1 Why did you **choose** / **consider** / **focus** to get the red coat and not the blue one?
- 2 You should **consider** / **focus** / **select** the advantages and disadvantages of each college before you decide on the best one.
- 3 This book doesn't **allow** / **make** / **think** sense to me.
- 4 Let's **consider** / **focus** / **select** on the most difficult exercises first and then end with the easy ones.
- 5 Hurry up and make up your **choice** / **mind** / **advantage** before it's too late!
- 6 I need to make a **decision** / **disadvantage** / **sense** before the end of the day.

#### 2 Complete the blog post with the words in the box.

advantages choices chose decision  
disadvantage focus made sense make up

Last year, I had to make the biggest <sup>1</sup> of my life so far – whether to go to a local university, or one far from home. It was hard, because neither of the <sup>2</sup> were perfect. Each one had a few different <sup>3</sup>, but also one big <sup>4</sup>. Moving away from home meant more freedom, but it also meant higher costs. Staying at home meant lower costs, but less freedom. I made a list of all of these things, but I couldn't <sup>5</sup> my mind about where to go. My parents suggested that I <sup>6</sup> on the good and bad things about each course, so I did. I realised that one course was better than the other and it <sup>7</sup> to go to the university that offered that course. So, I <sup>8</sup> the one that was 200 kilometres away. I've been here a year now and so far, so good!

## GRAMMAR

### future plans and intentions

#### 3 A Choose the correct word or phrase to complete the sentences.

- 1 We ..... tonight, but we're not sure.  
a might go out b 'll go out c 's going out
- 2 Thiago's got tickets for the film we ..... at 9 p.m.  
a 've seen b see c 're seeing
- 3 I think I ..... an early night later.  
a have b having c 'll have
- 4 We haven't thought about making plans for the weekend, so we ..... in.  
a stay b 'll probably stay c going to stay
- 5 Michael and I ..... up next weekend, but we haven't decided when.  
a are going to meet b meet c 'm meeting
- 6 I've booked the flights for the holiday we ..... in November.  
a take b 're taking c 've taken

#### B Put the words in the correct order.

- 1 pasta salad / think / have / I / the / I'll .
- 2 not / come / I / class / tomorrow / might / to .
- 3 going / see / They're / to / film / tonight / a .
- 4 do / are / to / What / this weekend / going / you ?
- 5 are / a friend / for lunch / meeting / Tom and I .
- 6 you / a call / give / Will / me / tomorrow ?

#### C Match sentences (1–6) with the purposes (a–d).

- 1 We've decided that we're going to have a holiday sometime later in the year.
- 2 I'm meeting Amelia at the restaurant at 7 p.m.
- 3 I thought I might order pizza later. What do you think?
- 4 Is that someone at the door? I'll go and see who it is.
- 5 Dan said he might come and see us later.
- 6 Marie is leaving at 4 p.m. today because she's got a doctor's appointment.
- a an arrangement
- b a future plan, but nothing is arranged
- c a decision the speaker makes at the time of speaking
- d a plan that is not sure

## PRONUNCIATION

#### 4 3.04 | weak forms of *are you* and *going to* | Listen and write the questions you hear.

- 1 .....
- 2 .....
- 3 .....
- 4 .....



## READING

### 5 Read the text. Select a word to fill the gap.

All business students are required to ..... a topic and inform their tutor of their decision before they begin their end-of-year projects.

- a select
- b request
- c focus

### 6A Read the title of the blog post and the paragraph headings. What is the blog post about?

- a four everyday choices we make in our lives
- b four positive decisions made by different people
- c four similar decisions that different people made

### B Read the blog post. Match the summaries (1–4) with the paragraphs (A–D).

- 1 This person believed they had to stop doing an activity, but after seeing other people doing it, the person realised it was possible to start again. This decision made the person's life very different.
- 2 This person gave up something so they could do something else. After the person became successful, they felt it was the right choice.
- 3 This person made a decision for them and another person. The other person didn't like it, but it was the correct decision for both of them.
- 4 This person got their wish, but it wasn't easy at first. However, after some time, the person was able to enjoy this experience.

### C Complete the sentences with one word from the blog post in each gap.

- 1 André's friends believed he was ..... to own a business as a teenager.
- 2 André needed extra ..... when a lot of people saw his social media page.
- 3 Maria describes her ability to find friends at first as .....
- 4 In the end, Maria made friends with some ..... who had similar feelings to her.
- 5 Josh first met his closest friend at .....
- 6 Josh's friend felt ..... about Josh's decision at first.
- 7 Amelia thought she had to give up ..... after her accident.
- 8 Amelia changed her view after she saw people doing an activity at the .....



## The best decision you have ever made

We asked you to share your experiences. Here are a selection.

### A André: Starting a company young

My friends thought I was crazy when I opened an online shop at the age of fourteen. They didn't understand why I wanted to work on my business and didn't always want to go out with them. What they didn't realise (and neither did I) is that my small business became my career a few years later. It all began when I got into model making and decided to sell what I made. When my online video channel got a lot of interest, I had to employ two staff. It's been hard work, but I'm happy with the result.

### B Maria: Studying abroad

Studying at a university on the other side of the world was a dream for me. I really wanted to explore the world. Of course, it wasn't easy at first. The college system was different to back home. It was hard to make friends when I didn't speak the local language so well, and I missed my family A LOT. But after a while, I met other international students who felt the same as me. We became close and had some amazing experiences together. By the end of the first year, I knew I'd made the right decision.

### C Josh: Ending a close friendship

I was really close to my best friend for twenty years. We'd met in primary school, and spent most of secondary school together. He was like a brother. Unfortunately, things changed when I got married and had a child, and I stopped spending so much time with him. He made me feel really awful about it. I decided to tell him to find new friends. He was angry at first, but it worked out better for both of us in the end.

### D Amelia: Giving a sport a chance

I played a lot of team sports at school. Then, when I was in my final year, I had an accident and ended up in a wheelchair. I thought my sports days were over. But one day, I was passing the university gym and I heard a lot of noise. I looked in and saw people like me playing basketball. They were really playing hard. When they asked me if I wanted to play, I said 'yes'. It changed my life.



# Lesson 3C

HOW TO ... | make polite inquiries  
VOCABULARY | facilities; places in a city  
PRONUNCIATION | polite intonation

## VOCABULARY

### facilities

1 Complete the description with one word in each gap.

Our university <sup>1</sup>c..... sits on the south side of the city. It is over a hundred years old, with both old and modern buildings. There are classrooms with the best technology, as well as a large <sup>2</sup>l..... with all the usual books and computers, and several <sup>3</sup>s..... areas for students to work quietly. The staff in the <sup>4</sup>e..... office are there to help our final year students find work after their course.

Our university has <sup>5</sup>h..... of residence for all of its first-year students to live in. This accommodation comes with private bathrooms and a kitchen and living area that students share. There is also a <sup>6</sup>s..... centre with exercise classes, and a <sup>7</sup>g..... with running machines and weights.

The city centre is very near. There, you'll find shops, cinemas, <sup>8</sup>t..... (if you like plays and concerts), and lots of places to eat. There are also several <sup>9</sup>l..... schools where students from other countries can take extra English lessons.

### places in a city

2 Complete the conversation using words from the box.

centre chemist's lane rank rental road station surgery

- A: Excuse me, is there a doctor's <sup>1</sup>..... around here?  
B: Yes, keep going along this cycle <sup>2</sup>.....  
A: Past the car <sup>3</sup>..... office?  
B: Yes, then past the taxi <sup>4</sup>..... It's just after that on the right.  
A: Great, thanks.  
B: If you get to the petrol <sup>5</sup>....., you've gone too far!

## How to ...

### make polite inquiries

3A 3.05 | Listen to a conversation between a group of new university students and a campus guide. Choose the things the students ask questions about.

- |                      |                 |
|----------------------|-----------------|
| 1 cinema             | 5 place to eat  |
| 2 gym                | 6 sports centre |
| 3 halls of residence | 7 shop          |
| 4 library            | 8 theatre       |

B 3.05 | Complete second question so it means the same as the first question. Then listen and check.

- Can we borrow e-books?  
Do you know .....
- What time does it open?  
Can you tell me .....
- Do they do pilates classes there?  
I'd like to know .....
- Where is the best place for lunch?  
Can you tell me .....
- Do they sell vegetarian food?  
Do you know .....
- How do we get to the campus shop from here?  
Can you tell us .....

## PRONUNCIATION

4 3.06 | polite intonation | Listen to the speakers. Is the intonation polite (P) or not polite (N)?

- 1 ..... 2 ..... 3 ..... 4 ..... 5 ..... 6 .....

## SPEAKING

5A Complete the conversation between a student (S) and a receptionist (R) with one word in each gap.

- R: Hello.  
S: Hi! I'd <sup>1</sup>..... to ask some questions about the gym.  
R: Sure. Go ahead.  
S: Could you tell <sup>2</sup>..... what time it opens?  
R: Yes. It opens at 7 a.m. and closes at 9 p.m.  
S: Great! Do you know <sup>3</sup>..... there are any running machines?  
R: I do. There are three running machines and three cycle machines. It's not a huge gym, but it's quite modern.  
S: Thanks. Also, I'd like to <sup>4</sup>..... how much it is.  
R: £100 for the year, or £4 each time you use it.  
S: Fantastic! Can <sup>5</sup>..... tell me if there are any dance classes?  
R: Yes, there are. The times are on our website.  
S: Can I <sup>6</sup>..... if they are included in the yearly fee?  
R: No, they cost extra. £3 each time.  
S: OK, great. Thanks!

B 3.07 | Listen and check.

C 3.08 | You are the student in the conversation in Ex 5A. Listen and speak after the beep. Record the conversation if you can.

D Listen to your recording and compare it to the model in Ex 5B.



# Lesson 3D

GRAMMAR | phrasal verbs

LISTENING | a conversation about what's important to you

## GRAMMAR

### phrasal verbs

1 A Choose the correct sentence. Sometimes both are correct.

- 1 a I've just put all the dishes away.  
b I've just put away all the dishes.
- 2 a We should stick with what we're doing.  
b We should stick what we're doing with.
- 3 a I'm looking my friend's son after today.  
b I'm looking after my friend's son today.
- 4 a I need to log onto a computer.  
b I need to log a computer onto.
- 5 a Don't forget to write it down.  
b Don't forget to write down it.
- 6 a I saw Toni pick up his phone.  
b I saw Toni pick his phone up.

B Complete the conversation with the verbs in the box and *off*, *on* or *up*.

get got picked put switched went

A: How was your morning?

B: Interesting!

A: Why?

B: Well, my alarm clock <sup>1</sup> ..... at 6 a.m.  
I lay in bed for ten minutes and after that, I  
<sup>2</sup> ..... I had a shower, and got  
dressed.

A: OK.

B: Then, after breakfast, I <sup>3</sup> ..... my coat .....  
I went to the front door and I <sup>4</sup> ..... my bag  
..... from the floor. I left the house, walked down  
the road to the train station so that I could  
<sup>5</sup> ..... a train for work.

A: And?


B: And then I <sup>6</sup> ..... my phone ..... and  
realised it was Saturday, and there was no work!

C Choose the correct phrase to complete the sentences.


- 1 You can't find your magazine because I .....  
a threw away  
b threw away it  
c threw it away
- 2 Did you ..... just now?  
a switch it the TV  
b switch the TV on  
c the TV switch on
- 3 Someone ..... last week, but they didn't  
take anything.  
a broke our house  
b broke our house into  
c broke into our house

- 4 I don't know this word so I need to ..... in a  
dictionary.  
a look it up  
b look up it  
c look up
- 5 I can put your coat somewhere if you want  
to .....  
a take it  
b take off it  
c take it off
- 6 I just saw Harry ..... in the city centre.  
a get on the bus  
b get on  
c get the bus on



## LISTENING

2A  3.09 | Listen to a radio interview with a life coach. Choose the things he says are important in life.

- |                              |                      |
|------------------------------|----------------------|
| 1 lots of money              | 5 friends and family |
| 2 a reason to get out of bed | 6 health             |
| 3 learning                   | 7 being on time      |
| 4 teachers                   | 8 sleep              |

B  3.09 | Listen again and choose the correct word(s) to complete the sentences.

- 1 Gavin says that hard work makes you feel  
**good / tired**.
- 2 He says that when we learn, we have the things we  
need to make **no mistakes / the right choices**.
- 3 He believes that it **is / isn't** necessary to have a  
teacher to learn.
- 4 He thinks we need **a few / a lot of** good friends.
- 5 Friends make us feel **more / less** relaxed.
- 6 Gavin says families help us to **buy / decide** things.
- 7 He believes that to be healthy, we need to do  
**a little / a lot of** regular exercise.
- 8 He says that when we're very tired, we get  
**annoyed / jealous** more often.

C   3.10 | Listen to the recording. Write what you hear. You will hear the sentences only once.

- 1 .....
- 2 .....
- 3 .....
- 4 .....





# Lesson 4A

GRAMMAR | modals for rules and advice

VOCABULARY | success

PRONUNCIATION | silent letters

## VOCABULARY

### success

#### 1 A Complete the definitions with one word in each gap.

The first letter is given.

- 1 A project that does not succeed is a f.....
- 2 If we stop trying, we g..... u.....
- 3 When something becomes hard but we don't stop, we c..... o.....
- 4 A person who always tries to win is c.....
- 5 A person who gets angry if they don't win is a b..... l.....
- 6 If you have a natural ability, you are t.....

#### B Choose the correct word or phrase to complete the sentences.

- 1 I'm ..... about finishing work on time, so I never work later than 6 p.m.  
a talented      b competitive      c strict
- 2 I used to take piano lessons, but I ..... them up when I was fourteen.  
a gave      b carried      c worked
- 3 I'm a very bad ..... when I play any kind of game.  
a failure      b loser      c success
- 4 We always work ....., but our manager never thanks us.  
a hard      b talented      c competitive
- 5 I didn't ..... very well in my vocabulary test.  
a give      b carry      c do
- 6 My colleagues think that if we ..... on working hard, we'll get a pay rise.  
a carry      b give      c work

#### C Complete the school reports for students with words and phrases in the box.

bad loser    carry on    competitive    did well    failure  
gives up    success    talented

Katy never <sup>1</sup> ....., even when something is really difficult. She's also quite <sup>2</sup> ....., so she tries hard to win. When she doesn't win, she can be a very <sup>3</sup> .....

Ben had a lot of <sup>4</sup> ..... this year and scored top marks in the class. But he's still afraid of <sup>5</sup> ..... and making mistakes.

Harry is a <sup>6</sup> ..... musician and singer, so it's sad that he wants to stop his music lessons. He <sup>7</sup> ..... in all of his exams this year and he should <sup>8</sup> ..... with his lessons next year.

## GRAMMAR

### modals for rules and advice

#### 2 A Match the sentences with the correct meaning (a or b).

- 1 I have to finish this report by 5 p.m.
- 2 We needn't do this by the end of the day.  
a It's necessary.      b It's not necessary.
- 3 You shouldn't go out without a coat.
- 4 We don't need to go out later.  
a It's not necessary.      b It's not a good idea.
- 5 You mustn't put your foot on the seat.
- 6 You don't have to sit there.  
a It's not allowed.      b It's not necessary.

#### B The sentences below have a mistake. Choose the best option to correct the mistake.

- 1 You don't have to go into that room while the paint is drying or you'll get paint on you.  
a needn't      b mustn't      c should
- 2 You must to see a doctor if you're not feeling well.  
a should      b mustn't      c don't have to
- 3 It's a public holiday tomorrow, so the office is closed and we mustn't go to work.  
a don't need to      b have to      c must
- 4 You shouldn't wear a suit if you don't want to.  
a mustn't      b needn't      c must

#### C Read the text. Complete the tips (1–6) with the correct form of *have to*, *need*, *must* or *should*.

### How to be a successful language learner

- 1 It's a good idea to practise speaking as much as you can.
- 2 Don't worry about mistakes. It isn't necessary for you to be 100% correct all the time.
- 3 It's not a good idea to spend hours studying without a break.
- 4 It's a good idea to study for a short time every day.
- 5 It's necessary to try to understand how you learn best.
- 6 It isn't necessary for you to look up every word in a dictionary. Try to guess the meaning.


- 1 You ..... as much as you can.
- 2 You ..... 100% correct all the time.
- 3 You ..... without a break.
- 4 You ..... for a short time every day.
- 5 You ..... understand how you learn best.
- 6 You ..... every word in a dictionary.

## PRONUNCIATION


#### 3 4.01 | silent letters | Underline the silent letter in each modal verb. Then listen and check.

- 1 should      2 shouldn't      3 mustn't

## LISTENING


**4A**  **4.02** | Listen to the introduction to a podcast. Choose the correct topic.

- 1 The problem of failure in our lives.
- 2 Success that is not planned.
- 3 How one woman became successful.

**B**  **4.03** | Listen to the rest of the podcast. Match the descriptions (1–6) with the products (a–d).

- 1 It used technology from transport.
- 2 It fell on the floor.
- 3 It had a chemical on it.
- 4 Customers didn't understand how to use it.
- 5 There wasn't enough of something.
- 6 It had a smaller amount of something than usual in it.

- a chocolate chip cookies
- b microwave oven
- c safety glass
- d tea bags

**C**  **4.03** | Listen again. Do the speakers agree (A) or disagree (D) with each other about the ideas (1–6)?

- 1 A plan isn't always necessary for success.
- 2 A microwave oven is necessary in life.
- 3 Science is a difficult subject.
- 4 How tea bags were made is the most interesting of all the stories.
- 5 Chocolate chip cookies are the best biscuits.
- 6 It's good that chocolate chip cookies were invented.



chocolate chip cookies

## WRITING

### an email/letter giving advice

**5** Complete the email with the phrases (a–f).

▲ ▼

↩ ★ 📧

Hi Maxim,

Great to get your email! I'm pleased you're enjoying university life.

You asked for advice about getting some work experience. First, <sup>1</sup> ..... decide what kind of company you want to work for. Maybe <sup>2</sup> ..... an online careers quiz to help you.

Then, look for local companies that offer work you're interested in. <sup>3</sup> ..... to do that online these days. Put together your CV. When applying to small companies, <sup>4</sup> ..... email it. Print it out and take it to the company. Ask to speak to someone about possible work so they get to know you.

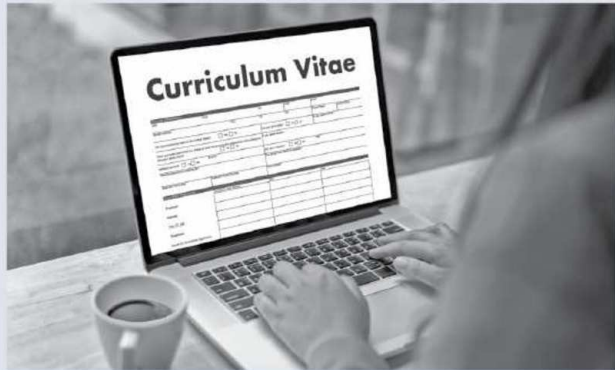
<sup>5</sup> ..... smile and speak clearly, and they might offer you a job.

Or maybe the parents of one of your friends own a business? If they do, <sup>6</sup> ..... asking them for some work? They can only say no!

I hope this helps.

All the best,

George



- a don't
- b you can do
- c you need to
- d why not try
- e Make sure you
- f It's easy

**6A** You are going to write an email or a letter to an English-speaking friend, Alex. Alex recently moved to your country and wants some advice on how to meet people. Before you write your email/letter, think about the following points.

- which suggestions to include
- the order of information
- which phrases you can use for giving advice

**B** Write your email or letter giving advice to Alex in 100–140 words.



# Lesson 4B

GRAMMAR | articles

VOCABULARY | technology collocations; word building: suffixes

PRONUNCIATION | the

## VOCABULARY

### technology collocations


- 1 A Complete the social media post with a verb from A and a noun or adjective from B.

**A**  
create created  
find go launched  
went

**B**  
an account information  
live viral the webpages  
a new website

### Hello to all our wonderful customers!

If you didn't see our post yesterday, we've just  
1 ..... which we think looks  
amazing and is easy to use. It was ready a week ago,  
but it only 2 ..... yesterday –  
the day of our fifth anniversary. That's right! We started  
this company five years ago. An online design expert  
3 ..... for us, and she did  
a brilliant job. You can 4 .....  
about all our products from the site – you just  
need to sign in. New customers will need to  
5 ..... before buying  
anything, but it only takes a minute. Finally, to celebrate  
our anniversary, we wrote and performed a silly song  
which we posted yesterday. It's just a bit of fun, but  
we'd love for it to 6 .....!

- B  Choose the correct word or phrase to complete the sentences.

- I can **discover** / **introduce** / **take** high-quality photos on my phone.
- I try not to **launch** / **share** / **take** information about my private life online.
- After receiving the wrong product, I **made** / **created** / **took** a call to the company.
- I'll **share** / **receive** / **send** you a message when I get home, to let you know I'm OK.
- I can't get to the bank today, so I'll **download their app** / **launch a website** / **receive a text** and use that.
- I can't seem to receive **apps** / **texts** / **webpages** on my phone at the moment.

### word building: suffixes

- 2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets.

- Gina is a great team ..... (lead)
- Scientists have made a new ..... (discover)
- The ..... of cars which can drive themselves is very interesting. (develop)
- The person who was the ..... of this app did a great job. (create)
- We'll be ..... if we have support. (succeed)
- Your presentation had a good ..... (introduce)

## GRAMMAR


### articles

- 3 A Complete the sentences with *a*, *an*, *the*, or – (no article).

- That's ..... best dessert I've ever had.
- Have you ever been to ..... New York?
- I'm hungry. I'm going to have ..... apple.
- I think ..... cats make better pets than dogs.
- I'm training to be ..... nurse at the moment.
- Do you know when ..... supermarket near us closes?


- B Match the sentences (1–6) in Ex 3A with the reasons for using each article (or no article).

- the first time something has been mentioned
- before a job
- we know which thing or person the speaker is talking about
- with a superlative
- connected with talking generally about people or things
- before the name of a place

- C  Choose the correct word or phrase to complete the sentences.

- Do you know what ..... time is?  
a a                      b an                      c the
- That building is ..... ugliest I've ever seen.  
a a                      b an                      c the
- Danny is excited because he went to the zoo and saw ..... elephant for the first time.  
a a                      b an                      c the
- I need ..... plumber to come and fix this sink. Do you know anyone I can call?  
a a                      b an                      c the
- Look at how bright ..... moon is tonight.  
a a                      b an                      c the
- I'd love to live in ..... house in a nice place with a huge garden.  
a a                      b an                      c the


## PRONUNCIATION

- 4  4.04 | *the* | Listen to the sentences. Is *the* pronounced /ðə/ or /ði:/?


- What's the problem? /ðə/ /ði:/
- The orange juice is over there. /ðə/ /ði:/
- The aeroplane's just taken off. /ðə/ /ði:/
- The children have arrived. /ðə/ /ði:/
- What's the time? /ðə/ /ði:/
- I've never seen the ocean. /ðə/ /ði:/




## READING

5  Read the text and answer the questions. Use no more than three words for each answer.

- 1 What did Minnie buy many of when preparing for bad weather?
- 2 What stopped working at Minnie's home when the bad weather arrived?
- 3 What did Minnie try to use that failed to open some tins of food?
- 4 What does Minnie ask people not to mention?


**Minnie**  
 3 hours ago

I recently got ready for a huge storm by buying lots of tins of food. However, when the storm came and we lost the power at home, I tried to open some tins of food, but I only had an electric tin opener and it didn't work. All of us have one piece of technology that we can't live without. Mine is a tin opener! What's yours? (And no mobile phones, please. I know none of us can live without those!)

6A Match the online replies (A–F) with the function of each piece of technology (1–6).

- 1 makes a kind of drink
- 2 changes how people look
- 3 helps people see better
- 4 helps people get from one place to another
- 5 fun to listen to
- 6 helps people find information

B Read the replies again. Are the sentences True (T) or False (F)?

- 1 Jo only gets lost when she's cycling.
- 2 Chandra likes to use different search engines.
- 3 Elena mentions two different types of technology that need power.
- 4 Miriam knows that her choice of technology is unusual.
- 5 Miriam says the only thing she needs glasses for is watching films.
- 6 Jack says he can make coffee as good as his coffee machine.
- 7 Elsa believes that music makes her life more interesting.
- 8 Elsa has a good singing voice.

### Replies to post: Technology I can't live without!

A

 **Jo**  
3 hours ago

For me it's GPS. I'm terrible at reading maps and, without the digital map on my phone telling me where to go, I get lost. I need it when I'm on foot or on my bike. Without GPS, I have no idea which direction to go in.



B

 **Chandra**  
2 hours ago

As well as important things like heating, I'm going to say search engines. I look things up online all the time, and having a good search engine means I can find what I need quickly. They're not all good, of course. I only use the best.

C

 **Elena**  
2 hours ago

I love my hairdryer and use it every time I wash my hair to dry it. My hair is really long and difficult to manage, so my hairdryer makes my life easier and makes me look better. I like my microwave oven, too. It's the only way I can cook!

D

 **Miriam**  
1 hour ago

It might be a strange choice, but I choose my glasses. I can't see a thing without them. If I had no glasses, I wouldn't be able to go to the cinema or ride my bike. And it would be terrible not to see my friends when they wave at me across the road.

E

 **Jack**  
30 minutes ago

I find it really hard to wake up in the mornings, so coffee is a necessity. I could make it myself, but it's never as good as the coffee my coffee machine makes. So, that's what I couldn't live without. My electric toothbrush is a close second.

F

 **Elsa**  
10 minutes ago

It's got to be music apps. How else can I download music and play it when I'm on the bus every day, or out for a run? My life would be very boring without music. No music means that I have to sing, and I don't want to hear that awful noise!

# Lesson 4C

HOW TO ... | explain rules and procedures

VOCABULARY | sports and games

PRONUNCIATION | *can* and *can't*

## VOCABULARY

### sports and games

**1 A** Complete the conversation using words from the box.

champions fans games lost match part  
scored supported

A: How was your netball <sup>1</sup> ..... today?

B: We won!

A: Congratulations! So, you're the <sup>2</sup> ..... now!

B: Yes! We <sup>3</sup> ..... last year's final, so it was great to win this time.

A: I hope lots of people <sup>4</sup> ..... you. Sorry I didn't come. I had to take <sup>5</sup> ..... in a work event.

**B** Complete the information about hockey with one word in each gap. The first letter is given.

Hockey players play on a hockey <sup>1</sup>p.....  
There are eleven <sup>2</sup>p..... in each team  
and each plays with a <sup>3</sup>s..... They  
<sup>4</sup>p..... the ball from one member of the  
team to another until someone puts it into the  
back of a net. If they succeed, they <sup>5</sup>s..... a  
goal, but the other team's <sup>6</sup>g..... will try to  
stop the ball. A <sup>7</sup>r..... manages the game  
and makes sure both teams follow the rules. At  
the end of seventy minutes of play, the team with  
the most goals <sup>8</sup>w..... If each team has  
the same number of goals, they <sup>9</sup>d.....

## How to ...

### explain rules and procedures

**2 A** **4.05** | Listen to someone explaining the rules of a game. Complete the notes with one word or a number in each gap.

#### How to play *Draw the phrase!*

Number of players: <sup>1</sup> ..... teams with  
<sup>2</sup> ..... or more players

Things you need to play: paper, something to  
<sup>3</sup> ..... with and a <sup>4</sup> .....

How to win: get the highest number of <sup>5</sup> .....

How long a game lasts: up to <sup>6</sup> ..... minutes

**B** **4.05** | Complete the sentences with one word in each gap. Then listen and check.

- There ..... two teams with at least two players in each team.
- To start ....., each player writes six phrases on a piece of paper.
- The player ..... to draw a picture that shows every phrase on their piece of paper.
- If you're drawing, you ..... speak.
- If you're guessing, you have ..... say your guesses out loud.
- You score ..... guessing each phrase correctly and getting points.
- After ....., the other players take their turn to draw pictures of the phrases.
- The ..... is to get the most points.

## PRONUNCIATION

**3** **4.06** | *can* and *can't* | Listen and write the word you hear in each sentence: *can* or *can't*.

- |         |         |         |
|---------|---------|---------|
| 1 ..... | 3 ..... | 5 ..... |
| 2 ..... | 4 ..... | 6 ..... |

## SPEAKING

**4 A** Complete the conversation with words from the box.

aim can have lasts played score

A: So, how do you play volleyball?

B: Well, there are two teams of six people.  
It's <sup>1</sup> ..... on a court.

A: And what do you need to do?

B: You <sup>2</sup> ..... to hit the ball over the net into the other side of the court, but you  
<sup>3</sup> ..... only use your hands or arms.

A: How many times can each team hit the ball?

B: Three times to get it to the other side of the net.

A: And how do you get a point?

B: You <sup>4</sup> ..... by getting the ball over the net so the other team can't return it.

A: How do you win a match?

B: The <sup>5</sup> ..... of the game is to score points, and the team with the most wins.

A: How long does it go on for?

B: It <sup>6</sup> ..... between sixty and ninety minutes.

**B** **4.07** | Listen and check.

**C** **4.08** | You are B in the conversation in Ex 4A. Listen and speak after the beep. Record the conversation if you can.

**D** Listen to your recording and compare it to the model in Ex 4B.





# Lesson 4D

GRAMMAR | present perfect + superlative

READING | memorable driving events

## GRAMMAR

### present perfect + superlative

**1 A** The sentences below have a mistake. Choose the best option to correct the mistake.

- I think that was the best journey I ever went on.
  - I'd ever gone
  - I never go on
  - I've ever been
- This is the baddest car we've ever owned!
  - bad
  - worst
  - worse
- Aya says that Norway is one of the most beautiful countries she have ever visited.
  - has ever visited
  - have visited ever
  - has visited ever
- This is the expensive restaurant in the city.
  - the more
  - the less
  - the most

**B** Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets.

- This is ..... (nice) present I ..... (ever / receive).
- Ela is ..... (rude) person I ..... (ever / meet).
- Theo's new flat is ..... (big) he ..... (live) in.
- This pizza is ..... (bad) I ..... (ever / eat).
- The staff at my company are ..... (good) I ..... (ever / work) with.
- My friend Anya is ..... (hard) worker I ..... (meet).

## READING

**2 A** Complete the article with the phrases (a–f).

- which is 40 percent of the way around the Earth
- because of the heat and sand there
- and perhaps you need to be a little bit crazy, too
- so the drivers have to quickly repair them
- and make it competitive
- or put them on a ship back to their country

**B** Match the statements with the events from the article.

- Drivers start the event from different places.
- There is a money prize.
- The people who started the event want drivers to learn about different countries.
- Drivers make their vehicle a little different so that it's not dangerous.
- The event takes place in winter.
- Drivers can choose the directions they take.
- It's necessary for people who take part in the race to give money to organisations.

## Driving events you can enter without being rich

Most of us have heard of the 24 Hours of Le Mans, the race where drivers try to go the longest distance over 24 hours. But have you heard of the 24 Hours of Lemons? For many people, entering a race like Le Mans is impossible because the cars are expensive. In the 24 Hours of Lemons, the cars mustn't cost more than \$500, so the drivers and their teams have to bring an old car to life <sup>1</sup> ..... Many of the cars have engine problems during the race, <sup>2</sup> ..... The winners get between \$400–600.

There are other events with low-priced cars. There's the Banjul Challenge, where drivers take cars that cost just £399 on a 5,600-kilometre journey through Europe and Africa. Between October and January, the coldest months, they travel from either Plymouth in the UK or Tarifa in Spain to Banjul in the Gambia. The Sahara Desert is the most difficult part, <sup>3</sup> ..... There's no winner of this event so it's not exactly a race. At the end of the event, drivers must give their cars to an organisation in Banjul, which sells them and gives the money to help local people.

The Mongol Rally is similar. Between July and September, drivers travel from England to Ulaanbaatar in Mongolia. It's a 16,000-kilometre journey, <sup>4</sup> ..... There's no special route and drivers don't get any help when their cars break down. This is because the creators of the event want drivers to find out about the different countries and speak to local people. Drivers have to give £500 to organisations which help to look after the planet, and they mustn't leave their cars in Mongolia. They either have to drive them home, <sup>5</sup> .....

Finally, if cars are too boring for you, you could try a different type of vehicle. How about a school bus? Or a lawnmower? Yes, a lawnmower – those machines you sit on which cut the grass in your garden. People change them a little so they're safe, and then ride them in races.

So, you don't need lots of money to enter an event. You just need a few hundred dollars <sup>6</sup> .....





## GRAMMAR

## 1 Choose the correct word or phrase to complete the sentences.

- What are you **laugh about** / **about laughing** / **laughing about**?
- Who **said** / **saying** / **did say** that we had to stay here until 5 p.m.?
- What **you are** / **are** / **are you** doing tomorrow?
- What kind of music shall we **listen** / **to listen** / **listen to**?
- Who **wants you to** / **you want to** / **do you want to** invite to your birthday dinner?
- Who **drank** / **drink** / **drinking** my water?

## 2 Complete the sentences with the correct verb. Use contractions where possible.

- I'm not ..... to see Jack until later in the week.
- I ..... meeting Rachel at four for coffee.
- They're not 100 percent sure, but they ..... go out with Tom later.
- We haven't got any milk – I ..... go and get some now.
- Who ..... coming to the party tonight?
- We ..... seeing the film that starts at 8 p.m.

## 3 Match the sentence halves.

- I usually look
  - I need to look some information
  - The plane will take
  - I took
  - Please pick
  - You need to put
- off soon.
  - after my cousin on Tuesdays.
  - up your rubbish before you leave.
  - them away in the cupboard there.
  - up online.
  - my coat off on the train and then left it there.

4 Complete the statements related to the notices with the positive or negative form of *have to*, *need to* or *must*.

## Competition

We can only accept applications from people aged eighteen or over.

- You ..... be eighteen to apply for the job.

## Walking on the grass is not allowed.

- You ..... walk on the grass.

## ENTRY

Guests are allowed to enter this building without a member of staff.

- Guests ..... have a member of staff with them when they enter this building.

You can take your own towel into the gym, but it is not necessary as we provide our own.

- You ..... take your own towel to the gym, but you can if you want to.

It is necessary for all students to leave the halls of residence by 30 June.

- Students ..... leave their accommodation by the end of June.

## Food is not allowed in the library.

- Students ..... bring food into the library.

## 5 Use the prompts to complete the sentences. Use a superlative adjective and the present perfect.

- This is / good / birthday / I / ever / have  
This is .....
- You've got / blue / eyes / I / ever / see  
You've got .....
- This meal / expensive / we / ever / eat  
This meal .....
- Peru is / far / Jon / ever / travel  
Peru is .....
- This is / pretty / village / I / ever / go / to  
This is .....
- Today is / bad / day / we / ever / have  
Today is .....

6 Complete the article with *a*, *an*, *the* or – (no article).

## First tweet sold for \$2.9m

When Jack Dorsey, one of <sup>1</sup>..... creators of Twitter, wrote his first message or 'tweet', he probably didn't imagine that he would sell it for almost \$3 million fifteen years later.

<sup>2</sup>..... message, which he sent on 21 March 2006, was short and simple, and said that he was creating his Twitter account.

<sup>3</sup>..... buyer of the message was Sina Estavi,

<sup>4</sup>..... businessperson in <sup>5</sup>..... Malaysia. He

believes that this early tweet is as important as <sup>6</sup>..... famous painting. The tweet by

Dorsey was sold using NFT technology. This technology stops people from copying <sup>7</sup>.....

message, photo or video, which makes it very safe. Dorsey gave all <sup>8</sup>..... money he received from the sale to <sup>9</sup>..... organisation that helps

<sup>10</sup>..... families in Africa.



## VOCABULARY

**7** Choose the correct ending (a–c). You do not need one of the options.

- 1 Our new website went
- 2 I won't be happy if that video goes
  - a viral and everyone sees it!
  - b live this morning.
  - c well and scored a few points.
- 3 I need to go to the doctor's
- 4 You can get some chocolate from the petrol
  - a surgery next week.
  - b rank over the road.
  - c station down the road.
- 5 What you just said makes
- 6 Hurry up and make
  - a up just because you lost.
  - b up your mind.
  - c a lot of sense.
- 7 I think I did quite
- 8 We worked
  - a part in a fun event.
  - b hard for this success.
  - c well in the exam this morning.

**8** Complete the news story with the words in the box. You do not need two of the words.

competitive fans gave up goalkeeper  
leadership match referees scored

The town football team were celebrating yesterday after winning their first <sup>1</sup> ..... in fourteen games. They <sup>2</sup> ..... two goals in the first half and one in the second for a 3:0 result. Vinnie Thompson was the player of the match. The <sup>3</sup> ..... Luke Wells played very well too, stopping two goals near the end of the game. <sup>4</sup> ..... had been unhappy at the team's failure to win a game in recent weeks, but were very happy with the result yesterday. The team's owner said that the change in <sup>5</sup> ..... at the club had helped to improve the players' performance. The new manager said he was proud of the team and the way they were <sup>6</sup> ..... from start to finish.



**9A** Complete the sentences with a word. The first letter is given.

- 1 Eduard's waiting for us at the railway s.....
- 2 I'm going to do some clothes shopping at the shopping m.....
- 3 I need to improve my g..... knowledge. I don't know enough about the world.
- 4 I'm going to live in the h..... of residence when I start university.
- 5 There are some study a..... in the library that are nice and quiet.
- 6 I like sitting in the town s..... and watching people walk by.

**B** Complete the words.

- 1 I've only read the introduc..... of the report.
- 2 We need a strong lead..... to manage the group.
- 3 The prepar..... for the wedding have gone well.
- 4 I need to rev..... for my history test.
- 5 I understand the problem, but I don't know what the solu..... is.
- 6 Do we have to memor..... all these words?

**10** For each question, choose the correct answer.

### The cost of success

Seeing our favourite athlete win can be very exciting, but we don't always understand what they had to <sup>1</sup> ..... up to achieve their success. Training is a full-time job, with often very early starts. Many athletes get up between 4 and 6 a.m. and are in bed by 9 or 10 p.m. They can't just make the <sup>2</sup> ..... to go out for the night with friends without missing training the next day, and missing training isn't a good <sup>3</sup> ..... because training is necessary. If an athlete misses just one day of training, they might not <sup>4</sup> ..... in their next race. Athletes can't just take a holiday when they want to, either. They have competitions to <sup>5</sup> ..... part in. If they do go away, they often train while they're on holiday. A few athletes <sup>6</sup> ..... so much on winning, that they even train on their wedding day.



- |               |               |            |          |
|---------------|---------------|------------|----------|
| 1 A make      | B give        | C hold     | D look   |
| 2 A decision  | B call        | C mind     | D sense  |
| 3 A advantage | B preparation | C solution | D option |
| 4 A score     | B succeed     | C launch   | D shoot  |
| 5 A have      | B be          | C take     | D do     |
| 6 A develop   | B stay        | C pay      | D focus  |

# Lesson 5A

GRAMMAR | relative clauses

VOCABULARY | news and social media

PRONUNCIATION | wh-

## VOCABULARY

### news and social media

1 A Choose the correct word to complete the sentences.

- The magazine ..... my article yesterday.  
a made      b produced      c published
- Have you seen the ..... on the front page of the newspaper this morning?  
a headline      b sign      c title
- A ..... wants to interview me for the local newspaper.  
a journalist      b mechanic      c plumber
- I'm going to ..... this photo online later if that's OK with you.  
a place      b post      c set
- We ..... out about the history of the town on a local website.  
a brought      b filled      c found
- You need to write some more ..... for our new blog.  
a content      b knowledge      c subjects

B Complete the article with the words in the box.

content fake find headlines journalist  
online post published

## April Fool!

People usually think of <sup>1</sup> ..... news as bad because it's not true, but on one day of the year – 1 April – people enjoy seeing it in newspapers and <sup>2</sup> ..... This day is known as April Fools' Day. It's a day when people write things that aren't true to play a joke on other people. For example, a blogger shares some amazing, but completely false, news in a blog <sup>3</sup> ..... Or a <sup>4</sup> ..... writes a story about a strange event that didn't actually happen. Look in newspapers or on news websites on 1 April, and you'll see stories under <sup>5</sup> ..... like *Pet cat talks!* I like to look through the news on this day and decide which stories I think are false. I might even do some quick research to <sup>6</sup> ..... out if I'm right. Of course, sometimes I see a story which a newspaper or news site has <sup>7</sup> ..... that doesn't seem real, but the <sup>8</sup> ..... of the article is actually true. That's because the world is full of very strange but true stories.



## GRAMMAR

### relative clauses

2 A The sentences below have a mistake. Choose the best option to correct the mistake.

- That's the café which I met Mia.  
a when      b that      c where
- Jill is the journalist who's husband you met earlier.  
a who      b whose      c that
- I've just read a story who can't possibly be real.  
a when      b where      c which
- Do you remember the day which we got really wet in the rain?  
a when      b where      c who

B Complete the sentences with a relative pronoun. Write – if no relative pronoun is necessary.

- Alice is a journalist ..... I trust.
- We never post photos online ..... show our friends without asking them first.
- I've got a lot of online friends ..... I've never actually met in real life.
- I know one news website ..... publishes only good news.
- We stopped to help a man ..... car had broken down.
- Writing a blog is something ..... I enjoy doing a lot.

C Rewrite the sentences. Use a relative pronoun.

- I like articles. The articles teach me something.  
I like articles which teach me something.
- I have a friend. His job is really unusual.  
I have a friend ..... really unusual.
- I like going to places. I know they will be quiet.  
I like going to places ..... will be quiet.
- I remember that day. We first met online then.  
I remember the day ..... online.
- I have a neighbour. She shares everything about her life online.  
I have a neighbour ..... everything about her life online.
- There's a page on this website. You can find really strange news stories there.  
There's a page on this website ..... really strange news stories.

## PRONUNCIATION

3 5.01 | wh- | Listen to the sentences. Which sound does the wh- pronoun (when, who, which, whose, where) have: /w/ or /h/?

- /w/ / /h/      3 /w/ / /h/      5 /w/ / /h/
- /w/ / /h/      4 /w/ / /h/



## READING

**4A** Read the article. Match the headings (a–f) with the gaps (1–4). You do not need two of the headings.

- a A news story with a happy ending
- b An animal with a fake skill
- c An artist who was 120 years old
- d Fake stories we want to believe
- e The painter which wasn't a person
- f Unusual plants which weren't real

1

We all enjoy strange and amazing stories, so it's always sad when we find out they're not true.

2

In 1964, journalists saw four modern paintings by new French artist Pierre Brassau at an art gallery. Almost all the journalists were positive about the paintings. One said the way the artist painted was similar to the way a dancer dances. The only negative journalist said it looked like a monkey had painted the pictures. He wasn't wrong. A Swedish journalist had got a monkey from a zoo to paint them. He wanted to test the art journalists and check if they had the skills to see that the artist wasn't human. After learning the truth, one journalist still believed the monkey's paintings were the best in the gallery.

3

Clever Hans was a horse in the late 1800s and early 1900s who could do maths. Hans's trainer, Wilhelm van Osten, gave Hans numbers to add together. The horse then moved his leg the correct number of times to give the answer. Van Osten allowed a group of scientists to study Hans because he really believed that Hans was clever. One young scientist quickly realised that the horse wasn't clever and couldn't do maths. His trainer gave information to the horse without knowing it. When the horse came to the number which was the answer, the trainer's face moved a little. The horse saw this and stopped moving his leg.

4

In 1957, a famous journalist on a serious BBC news programme gave a report about pasta. The journalist told British people that farmers in Switzerland had many pasta trees which were growing a lot of spaghetti that year because the temperatures were higher than normal. He even showed pictures of the long thin pasta on trees. Pasta wasn't very popular in Britain at the time, and many people believed the news story. Some of them called the BBC to ask how they could grow their own pasta at home. The BBC told them to plant some pasta in tomatoes. Of course, none of this was real. It was 1 April and an April Fools' joke.

**B** Read the text and answer the questions. Use no more than three words for each answer.

- 1 What nationality did people think the artist of the four paintings was?  
.....
- 2 What type of person did one journalist compare the artist's skills to?  
.....
- 3 What did one journalist suggest had painted the paintings?  
.....
- 4 Where was the real painter of the four paintings from?  
.....

**C** Read the article again. Are the statements True (T) or False (F)?

- 1 Most of the art journalists who saw the paintings knew Pierre Brassau was a fake.
- 2 The Swedish journalist wanted to see how good the art journalists' knowledge of art really was.
- 3 None of the journalists liked the paintings when they learnt that Pierre Brassau was a monkey.
- 4 The horse used part of his body to give an answer to a question.
- 5 Hans' trainer knew Hans couldn't do maths.
- 6 The trainer's face gave Hans information.
- 7 The report about pasta first appeared on a funny TV show.
- 8 The journalist said that the weather was the reason for the amount of pasta on trees.
- 9 When people phoned the BBC about growing pasta, the BBC told them the report was a joke.

**D** Complete the sentences with one word from the article in each gap.

- 1 The article describes the type of paintings in the gallery as ..... art.
- 2 One journalist continued to believe the paintings were good after he learnt the .....
- 3 Hans's trainer thought that Hans could ..... two numbers together.
- 4 Hans's trainer was happy for some scientists to ..... Hans.
- 5 The BBC journalist said that spaghetti was growing well because of higher ..... than normal.
- 6 The BBC report about pasta trees wasn't serious. It was just a .....





# Lesson 5B

GRAMMAR | reported speech

VOCABULARY | social issues; the environment

PRONUNCIATION | silent letters

## VOCABULARY

### social issues; the environment

**1 A** Complete the words in brackets so they can replace the words in bold.

- There's a lot of **rubbish** in the river.  
(p.....)
- My mum is a **person** who organises events to try to make people think more about climate change.  
(an a.....)
- Let's help to clean up all the **empty plastic bottles and fast-food bags** in the park. (w.....)
- This **area** is full of trees, and it's hot and often wet.  
(r.....)
- I **give** £10 to a local hospital each month.  
(d.....)
- It's **an organisation** that helps families in need.  
(a c.....)

**B** Choose the correct word or phrase to complete the sentences.

- We need to organise some kind of ..... to stop people dropping rubbish in the countryside.  
a activist    b campaign    c charity
- People here try hard to keep the ..... clean.  
a climate    b environment    c pollution
- We're lucky because we don't experience natural ..... in this area.  
a disasters    b resources    c smoke
- One result of climate change is higher ..... of rain.  
a levels    b pollution    c waste
- The air gets dirty when cars sit in traffic .....  
a transport    b smoke    c jams
- All of those bottles need to be ..... so we can use them again.  
a changed    b recycled    c wasted

**C** Complete the sentences with the words in the box. You do not need one of the words.

change disaster jam resources rubbish  
smoke transport

- Summers are hotter because climate ..... affects temperatures.
- Too much factory ..... in the air isn't good for anyone.
- Let's take public ..... rather than drive.
- Our heating system doesn't use natural ..... like gas, wood or oil.
- The storm last year was a natural ..... that affected a lot of people.
- There's a large amount of plastic ..... in the oceans.

## GRAMMAR

### reported speech

**2 A** Choose the correct word or phrase to complete the sentences.

- The organisers said they ..... need our help, so we went home.  
a don't    b hadn't    c didn't
- Matthew said he ..... to a concert later that evening.  
a was going    b go    c is going
- Annie ..... us that she'd had a great time.  
a replied    b told    c said
- It's 6 p.m. now and Liam said that he ..... at work until 7 p.m.  
a is    b 's being    c 'd be
- When I called Ben to ask him where he was, he said he ..... football in the park with his friends.  
a played    b was playing    c is playing
- Last year, Lisa said that she ..... to over twenty different countries.  
a have been    b go    c had been

**B** Report the things that people said yesterday.

'I'm organising a beach clean.'

- Maria told us that she ..... a beach clean.

'I've stopped buying plastic bottles of water.'

- Brian told us that he ..... plastic bottles of water.

'We can meet you at 2 p.m. if you're free.'

- Emma said that she ..... at 2 p.m. if we were free.

'I broke my leg while skiing.'

- Jasmine told us that she ..... her leg while skiing.

'I was sick all day because I'd eaten something bad.'

- Hugo said that he ..... sick all day because he'd eaten something bad.

## PRONUNCIATION

**3** **5.02 | silent letters** | Choose five words which include silent letters. Listen and check.

campaign charity environment knowledge  
plumber pollution mechanic transport



## LISTENING

**4A** **5.03** | Listen to a podcast about projects which have improved city life. Choose the correct solution for each problem: a or b.

- 1 There aren't enough green spaces.
  - a Ask the government for help.
  - b Make your own green spaces.
- 2 Some families don't have money to buy many books.
  - a Visit a book cupboard.
  - b Start a library bus.
- 3 Art galleries are expensive and busy.
  - a Create your own gallery.
  - b Join an art club.

**B** **5.03** | Listen again. Choose the correct answers.

- 1 The presenter describes
  - a the positive things about city life.
  - b the negative things about city life.
  - c both positive and negative things about city life.
- 2 Peter says making a green space is a good way to
  - a do something with people with similar interests.
  - b grow your own fruit and vegetables.
  - c get away from online activities.
- 3 Teresa likes the idea of a book cupboard because of
  - a her interests when she was young.
  - b her job as a teacher at a school.
  - c the dreams of her own children.
- 4 The rule of the book cupboard is that
  - a you must leave a book when you take one out.
  - b people must pay \$1 for each book they take.
  - c only children can take a book out of the library.
- 5 Michael organised an event where people
  - a could show their art in a gallery.
  - b were able to sell their works of art to customers.
  - c let other artists take their works of art.
- 6 At the park art event, Michael was surprised that
  - a the skill of the artists was so good.
  - b there were lots of different types of art.
  - c it was so popular with children.

**5** **5.04** | Listen to the recording. Write what you hear. You will hear the sentences only once.

- 1 .....
- 2 .....
- 3 .....
- 4 .....

## WRITING

**an online comment**

**6** Complete the comment to a local newspaper with the phrases in the box.

It would also be good    One idea is to    The issue  
The problem is that    Unfortunately    We could do

I've lived in my area of the city for over forty years and I love it here. <sup>1</sup>..... people don't know each other like they used to in the past. New people, especially young people, who come to the area are polite. <sup>2</sup>....., they don't make an effort to make friends. They sometimes don't even know their neighbours' names. <sup>3</sup>..... is making our area a worse place to live because we can't support each other, and work together, when we're strangers. <sup>4</sup>..... have welcome parties for people who are new to the area. <sup>5</sup>..... to organise regular events where people can meet and chat. <sup>6</sup>..... this online. It doesn't have to be face-to-face. These things will help us to build a community again.

**7A** Think of a problem in your area, for example with transport, pollution, entertainment, shops or schools. Decide the following things.

- what the problem is
- why it happens
- what the effect of the problem is

**B** Write an email to a local English-language newspaper about the problem and offer some solutions. Include phrases from Ex 6. Write 100–140 words.

**8** Read the question. Then plan, write and review your answer. You must write at least 75 words.

People should do more to build communities in their area.

Do you agree or disagree with this statement?  
Why/Why not?





# Lesson 5C

HOW TO ... | give and respond to personal news

VOCABULARY | events and occasions

PRONUNCIATION | intonation to exaggerate feelings

## VOCABULARY

### events and occasions

1 A Choose the correct word to complete the messages.

That photo of us at the concert  
1 celebrated / got / won 350 likes yesterday.

Jen and I 2 got / had / made  
a big argument earlier today.

How do you want to 3 celebrate / graduate / win  
your birthday this year? A party?

Alex 4 got / passed / won the writing  
competition. We're so proud of him!

I can't believe I 5 broke / failed / graduated  
my piano exam. I'm really upset.

We're 6 losing / moving / passing house  
tomorrow. I'll send you our new address then.

Zach has 7 broken / failed / lost his laptop  
again. He dropped it and now it won't start.

Did you know that Tom and his partner  
have 8 done / got / had engaged?

I heard you 9 got / passed / won  
a new job. Congratulations!

Well done on 10 celebrating / graduating /  
passing from university! I know how hard  
you worked 😊

B Complete the conversation using words from the box.

celebrate engaged failed get graduated  
lost passed promoted

A: I've just been 1 ..... I'm a manager now.

B: Congratulations! I've just 2 ..... my job. My  
company's closing.

A: Oh no! I'm sure you'll 3 ..... a new job soon.  
You always 4 ..... exams with high scores.  
You 5 ..... from a good college and you've  
got work experience. Companies will want you!

## How to ...

### give and respond to personal news

2 Are the phrases (1–6) giving or responding to news?  
Which ones are for good news?

- 1 I'm so happy for you!
- 2 What a shame.
- 3 I can't believe it. That's great!
- 4 There's something I need to tell you.
- 5 I'm sorry to hear that.
- 6 I'm really pleased to tell you ...

## PRONUNCIATION

3 5.05 | intonation to exaggerate feelings | Listen.  
Match the sentences (1–6) with the patterns (a–f).

- |                           |          |
|---------------------------|----------|
| 1 That is good news.      | a OoOo   |
| 2 I'm sorry to hear that. | b oOooOo |
| 3 That's wonderful news.  | c OoO    |
| 4 Wow, that's awesome.    | d oOoo   |
| 5 Congratulations!        | e oooOo  |
| 6 What a shame!           | f oOooO  |

## SPEAKING

4A Complete the conversation with the words in the box.

awesome bad congratulations is hear  
news shame

A: I've got some amazing 1 ..... to tell  
you. My sister's had her baby!

B: That 2 ..... good news.

A: Yes, it is. Unfortunately, the baby was born a bit  
early, so he has to stay in hospital for a little while.

B: I'm sorry to 3 ..... that. I hope he's OK.

A: He's fine. The doctors just want to check him.

B: Oh, that's wonderful news.

A: I've got some more news. I'm getting married!

B: Wow, that's 4 ..... 5 ..... !

A: Thanks! But 6 ..... news, I'm afraid. We  
don't have enough money to get married now. We  
have to wait for another two years.

B: Oh, what a 7 ..... ! I've just bought a  
new suit!

B 5.06 | Listen and check.

C 5.07 | You are B in the conversation in Ex 4A.  
Listen and speak after the beep. Record the  
conversation if you can.

D Listen to your recording and compare it to the model  
in Ex 4B.





# Lesson 5D

GRAMMAR | *will, might and be going to* for predictions  
LISTENING | positive news stories

## GRAMMAR

### *will, might and be going to* for predictions

**1 A** Choose the correct word or phrase to complete the sentences.

- The sky's gone dark, so I'm pretty sure ..... to rain.  
a it's going      b it might      c it will
- I know you're nervous about the test, but I'm sure ..... do well.  
a you might      b you'll      c you're going
- We're late, so ..... miss the start of the film.  
a we're going to      b we won't      c we might not
- Starting a new job can be hard, but I feel sure that ..... be fine.  
a you might      b you're going      c you'll
- I'm not sure this is going to work, but I ..... be wrong.  
a won't      b might      c am going to
- Iwona looks really upset and I'm sure she's ..... to cry.  
a going      b might      c will


**B** Complete the conversation with one word in each gap.

- A: Did you hear about Jeff's new job?  
B: Yes, it's great. I'm sure he <sup>1</sup> ..... enjoy doing something new.  
A: Hmm. I read an article online about the company. The staff aren't very happy there. I don't think that Jeff is going <sup>2</sup> ..... like it.  
B: Oh dear, that's not good. Will you tell him not to work there?  
A: No. He <sup>3</sup> ..... not be happy with me if I do. I'm sure of it. He doesn't like people telling him what to do.  
B: You could just show him the article. He might <sup>4</sup> ..... mind that.  
A: Maybe, but I'm not sure it <sup>5</sup> ..... help him. He's already left his old job, so I think it's <sup>6</sup> ..... to be too late for him to change his mind.

**C** Put the words in brackets in the correct place in each sentence.


- I think you'll enjoy this news story. (probably)
- We're not going to get there on time. (definitely)
- There won't be printed newspapers in thirty years. (probably)
- You're going to get promoted soon. (definitely)
- We won't see Serena tomorrow. (probably)
- People will want to keep watching TV news in the future. (definitely)
- People are not going to stop using social media soon. (probably)
- I'm not going to have time to see you tomorrow. (definitely)

## LISTENING


**2A**  **5.08** | Listen to some positive news stories. Number the headlines (a–f) in the order that you hear about them.



- Cleaner gets a new flat
- Animal receives a new home
- Woman gets ring back
- People can rent gardens online
- Child saves family members from water
- New mums and dads receive cash

**B**  **5.08** | Listen again. Are the statements True (T) or False (F)?

- The boy was in the water for around 60 minutes.
- Someone saw the boy in the water and called for help.
- The woman's ring fell into the water while her partner was asking her to marry him.
- The man who found the ring took a long time to find it.
- A new app helps both garden owners and people who don't have a garden.
- The app creator hopes it will improve relationships between people who live in the same area.
- Bess the dog didn't like being near people in the past.
- The couple gave money to people with babies in the street.
- The cleaner had to live in a different place when she lost her job.
- The cleaner was given a new home by the company she worked for.

**C**  **5.09** | Complete the sentences from the news stories with one word. The first letter is given. Then listen and check.

- The woman was getting on a boat the day after g..... engaged, when the ring fell off her finger and into the water.
- The a..... of the app is to help those people who want gardens, and others who have gardens, but can't look after them.
- The app's c..... wants to bring people together and make communities stronger.
- For a long time, this female dog was very n..... around people and other dogs ...
- Parents buying things for their new babies in California yesterday were s..... to find money in the products.
- And finally, a cleaner who l..... her job got a big surprise yesterday ...



# Lesson 6A

GRAMMAR | *used to*  
VOCABULARY | the arts  
PRONUNCIATION | *used to*

## VOCABULARY

### the arts

**1 A** Choose the correct word to complete the sentences.

- Dani's in her **drawing / studio / subject** finishing a painting.
- Most of the architect's building **composers / designs / galleries** are very modern.
- Many university students choose to study the **arts / styles / works** like music and dance.
- When the band sang their most famous song, the **audience / recording / venue** shouted loudly.
- I create many paintings of the same **artist / subject / works** so I can show it in different ways.
- We didn't see the show at the theatre, but we watched the **design / recording / studio** of it on TV.

**B** Complete the article with the words in the box.

art gallery design drawings painter studio  
styles subjects works

## Art is more than a painting

When we think of art, we often imagine a

1 \_\_\_\_\_ – someone who sits in a 2 \_\_\_\_\_ – creating a painting and then showing it to people at a city 3 \_\_\_\_\_ together with paintings by other people. But there are some unusual artists who do very different things. There's Erika Iris Simmons, whose 4 \_\_\_\_\_ are famous musicians. She creates images of them using the thin, brown tape from the musicians' cassette (those things people used to listen to before CDs and MP3s). Then, there's Salavat Fidai, whose 5 \_\_\_\_\_ of art are made from a pencil, but they're not 6 \_\_\_\_\_ made with a pencil. The pencil is the art. Fidai first makes a 7 \_\_\_\_\_ of something or someone. He then uses a knife to cut the end of a pencil into the same shape. The person or thing is tiny, but perfect! And then there's Brian Dettmer, who uses a knife on old books and turns them into something new. So, there are many different ways of creating art and many different 8 \_\_\_\_\_ to enjoy.

## GRAMMAR

### used to

**2 A** Choose the correct word or phrase to complete the sentences.

- Did you \_\_\_\_\_ do a lot of art at school?  
a used to      b use to      c used
- We \_\_\_\_\_ our grandparents every summer.  
a used to visit      b use to visit      c used to visiting
- Francine \_\_\_\_\_ a dancer for a year.  
a used to be      b use to be      c was
- I \_\_\_\_\_ eat tomatoes, but I do now.  
a didn't used to      b didn't use to      c used to
- We \_\_\_\_\_ get up early, but we do now.  
a didn't used to      b used never to      c never used to
- I \_\_\_\_\_ architecture at university for four years in the 1990s.  
a used to study      b studied      c have studied

**B** Complete the comments on a social media post with *used to* and the correct form of the verb in brackets. When *used to* is not possible, use the past simple form.

Did you 1 \_\_\_\_\_ (be) really good at art at school but aren't now? Tell us your experiences!

**Max:** I 2 \_\_\_\_\_ (draw) really badly, but I 3 \_\_\_\_\_ (take) some classes a few years ago and I can draw well now.

**Belinda:** I 4 \_\_\_\_\_ (not like) art much at school, but I enjoy it now. I'm not good at it, but I enjoy it!

**Javier:** I 5 \_\_\_\_\_ (love) painting, but I 6 \_\_\_\_\_ (stop) doing it when I started work because I didn't have time.

**Isobel:** I 7 \_\_\_\_\_ (never / enjoy) doing art. At school, I 8 \_\_\_\_\_ (prefer) working with wood. I still do.

## PRONUNCIATION

**3 A** **6.01 | used to** Listen and write the number of words you hear in each sentence.

1 \_\_\_\_\_ 2 \_\_\_\_\_ 3 \_\_\_\_\_ 4 \_\_\_\_\_ 5 \_\_\_\_\_ 6 \_\_\_\_\_


**B** **6.01** Listen again and write the sentences.

- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_





## READING

- 4  Read the text. Choose the correct word to complete the sentence.

We are pleased to announce that  
photographs ..... by local artists  
will be on show at this gallery from 1–31 May.

a done    b made    c taken

- 5A Read the article about photographer Gregory Crewdson. Which topics (1–6) does the writer mention?

- 1 what is special about Crewdson's photos
- 2 where Crewdson went to university
- 3 Crewdson's first photo
- 4 how Crewdson takes photographs
- 5 what gave Crewdson his idea
- 6 Crewdson's photos in art galleries

**B Choose the correct option (a–c).**

- 1 The writer says Crewdson and Hopper are similar
  - a because their art includes unusual activities.
  - b because their art shows normal life.
  - c because their art looks like a film.
- 2 Crewdson's works are different from Hopper's
  - a because we can only see them in cinemas.
  - b because they include something unusual.
  - c because they show a different country.
- 3 The writer says that many other photographers
  - a studied the arts at a university.
  - b plan when to take their pictures.
  - c feel pleased if they get an amazing photo.
- 4 Why is Crewdson different to other artists?
  - a He knows what will be in his photos before he takes them.
  - b He works with a small number of staff.
  - c He only uses things that he can find in the area.
- 5 In many of Crewdson's photos, the subjects
  - a make strange things from materials around them.
  - b enjoy the evening because new things happen.
  - c are unsure why they're doing certain things.
- 6 The feelings people have in the photos make us
  - a ask questions about the photos.
  - b think of reasons for the feelings.
  - c experience the same feelings.

**C Choose the correct word(s) to complete the sentences.**

- 1 The writer says that when we see the works of Crewdson and Hopper, we imagine **films** / **stories**.
- 2 The people in Crewdson's photos are **actors** / **photographers**.
- 3 The writer says that the way that Crewdson takes a photo is similar to how a **film** / **painting** is made.
- 4 Crewdson got his idea for his photographs from a **film character** / **mountain in a film**.
- 5 People in his photos are often **afraid** / **annoyed**.
- 6 The writer says that when we see the content of Crewdson's photos, we think about **'Who?'** / **'Why?'**.

## Photographs that tell a story

Look at photos in any gallery and you'll see something interesting, but look at a Gregory Crewdson photo and you'll feel like you're at the cinema. Crewdson's photos are sometimes compared to the paintings of Edward Hopper. They both show regular scenes from everyday life in the USA and they both build stories in our minds. What's different is that Crewdson's photos show real life, but also something not real. Something strange.

Crewdson studied art at Yale University, and is now a professor of photography there. Many photographers take photos of people, places or events at the time they happen, and feel both lucky and happy when they get the perfect image. Crewdson takes time to plan every detail of his photographs before he takes them. He wants to be sure that everything in the photo will be perfect. He doesn't work alone or with a small team like many photographers do. He has a huge group of people working with him, including actors that appear in the pictures. Some photographers will only take photos of what is around them. Crewdson creates a scene a bit like a film, with special lights, and things he brings in, like old cars, or rain from a machine.

Crewdson often takes his photos when day meets night, because he believes that unusual things can happen at this time – things that might not be quite real. In a lot of his photographs, people do strange things, often without understanding why. He says that the film *Close Encounters of the Third Kind* from the 1970s gave him this idea. In this film, a character makes shapes of mountains from things around him, but he doesn't know why.

Crewdson's photos make us feel like the people in the photos. They're often worried or frightened because they don't understand something happening around them. In one photograph, we see a man on his hands and knees in the living room of his home, looking at a hole in the floor. A purple light is shining up through the floor. There are four other holes with light in the room too. Who made the holes? What's under the floor? What's creating the light? When we see this, we start imagining stories about why. This is exactly what Crewdson wants.





# Lesson 6B

GRAMMAR | comparatives and superlatives

VOCABULARY | creativity: word building

PRONUNCIATION | word stress in word families

## VOCABULARY

### creativity: word building

1 A Choose the correct word to complete the sentences.

- I'm taking a ..... course at college.  
a photo      b photograph      c photography
- Teresa's great at science, but she's not very good at .....  
a art      b talent      c photograph
- I'd love to be a really ..... dancer like my mum, but I can't dance at all.  
a jealous      b talented      c terrified
- I hope that one day people will think I'm a really clever and ..... musician on the guitar.  
a fake      b photographic      c skilful
- Let's ..... that we're on a beautiful beach.  
a create      b imagine      c invent
- Everyone in my family has a ..... for acting.  
a creativity      b skill      c talent

B Complete the blog post with the words in the box.

create   imagination   photographer   photography  
skills   talented

### We can all take amazing photos

If you have a camera on your phone, you can be a great <sup>1</sup> ..... All you need is an interest in <sup>2</sup> ....., a little understanding of your camera and a bit of <sup>3</sup> ..... As soon as you see something interesting, take out your phone and take a picture. Not even the most <sup>4</sup> ..... artists were great at first, so don't feel bad if you don't <sup>5</sup> ..... brilliant photos immediately. Look at photos online and notice what makes them good. Do the same thing with your own photos. You'll soon find that your <sup>6</sup> ..... improve. And remember – practice makes perfect.

C Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets.

- I'm not an ..... but I do love to paint. (art)
- You need a lot of ..... in my job. (create)
- I want to be really good at ..... (photograph)
- I'm not very ..... at painting. (skill)
- I don't think I'm particularly ..... but some people say I am. (create)
- The stories you tell are very ..... (imagine)
- Ellen used to be a ..... footballer when she was young. (talent)
- I'm sure if you use your ....., you can think of some new ideas. (imagine)

## PRONUNCIATION

2 A | word stress in word families | Put the words in the box in the correct stress group (1–3).

artist   artistic   creative   creativity   imagine  
imaginative   photograph   photographic  
talent   talented

- The first syllable is stressed: .....
- The second syllable is stressed: .....
- The third syllable is stressed: .....

B 6.02 | Listen and check.

## GRAMMAR

### comparatives and superlatives

3 A The sentences below have a mistake. Choose the best option to correct the mistake.

- This exercise is easier the last one.  
a easier than      b the most easy      c more easier
- The bathroom is furthest room on the right.  
a the further      b the furthest      c further than
- This sofa isn't as comfortable my old one.  
a more comfortable      b as comfortable than  
c as comfortable as
- I can't sing better as you can.  
a well as      b as well as      c as good as

B Complete the blog post with the comparative or superlative form of the adjectives in brackets.




### How to be a creative thinker


I'm not <sup>1</sup> ..... (creative) person in the world, or even in my family. Creativity isn't something I was born with, but I've become <sup>2</sup> ..... (imaginative) since I read an interesting article called 'How to improve your imagination'. I used to be someone who didn't want to try new ideas in case something went wrong. I didn't pay attention to things creative people did, and I was probably <sup>3</sup> ..... (bad) person I know at taking time off from work. But the article made me change my ways. I've become <sup>4</sup> ..... (talented) when thinking of new ideas. I listen <sup>5</sup> ..... (carefully) to the ideas of creative people, so I can use some of them myself. I've also become <sup>6</sup> ..... (good) at taking time off from work, so I have the time to think. In fact, I feel great these days. I'm much <sup>7</sup> ..... (relaxed) and much <sup>8</sup> ..... (stressed).




## LISTENING

**4A**  **6.03** | Listen to the introduction to a podcast. Choose the correct topic.



- a using science to understand creativity
- b ways that we can all be more creative
- c how our studies make us more creative

**B**  **6.04** | Listen to the rest of the podcast. Are the statements True (T) or False (F)?

- 1 Scientists have been able to understand the brain and creativity better in recent years.
- 2 Creativity happens when different parts of the brain communicate with each other.
- 3 Our creativity depends only on our mother and father.
- 4 Creative people are usually their most creative when they're young.
- 5 Alicia is unsure if adults become more creative through play and films.
- 6 Mobile phones keep our minds too busy to be creative.

**C**  **6.04** | Listen again and complete the sentences with one word in each gap.

- 1 Alicia says that creativity occurs in ..... parts of the brain.
- 2 When we're creative, we use different parts of our brain for different .....
- 3 Alicia explains that the human brain changes its ..... during our lives.
- 4 Alicia says that children learn when they ..... creative people.
- 5 Alicia says that clean air and good ..... helps creativity in adults.
- 6 Alicia believes that we're usually more creative without .....

**5**   **6.05** | Listen to the recording. Choose the words in the text that are different from what you hear.

We know that adults are more creative when they get outside and have some fresh air, and when they get a great night's sleep. And also, when they have their phones away from them. We're creative when we empty our minds and let new ideas in. That doesn't always happen when we're using technology.



## WRITING

### a review

**6** Choose the correct word(s) to complete the review.



#### A dirty but fun experience!



One of the best experiences I've ever had was when I went paintballing in a forest with friends a few years ago. <sup>1</sup>**Although / Because of** I wasn't sure what to expect, it was fun.

Before the game, we divided ourselves into two teams. Then, the teams started shooting paint at each other. The idea was to get into the other team's camp and take their flag. Sadly, they were better and got our flag first.

<sup>2</sup>**Unless / While** my team lost, I still really enjoyed the experience and I would definitely recommend it. I got dirty <sup>3</sup>**because of / while** the paint, but I laughed a lot. Just one piece of advice – don't do it <sup>4</sup>**although / unless** you're wearing lots of clothes. Those paint balls can hurt if they hit your skin!



**7A** You are going to write a review of an experience you have had (for example a sports event, a creative activity, or a visit to an interesting place). Decide the following things.

- what the experience was and when it happened
- what happened
- say what was good and/or bad about it
- say if you'd recommend it and why

**B** Write your review in 100–140 words. Use linking words to connect your ideas. Include at least one comparative and one superlative adjective.



# Lesson 6C

HOW TO ... | ask for and give opinions and reasons

VOCABULARY | extreme adjectives

PRONUNCIATION | intonation for expressing opinions

## VOCABULARY

### extreme adjectives

#### 1 A Choose the correct word to complete the sentences.

- 1 The use of colours in this painting is **impossible** / **outstanding**. I love them.
- 2 I know I asked for a small piece of cake, but this is **fantastic** / **tiny**!
- 3 These new trousers are **fascinating** / **horrible** on me. They're too big and look really bad.
- 4 I'd love to be a great artist, but I think it's **essential** / **impossible** for me now.
- 5 I love this film. I think everything about it is **fantastic** / **terrible**.
- 6 I'm reading a short, but **fascinating** / **huge** book about bees.

#### B Complete the conversation using words from the box.

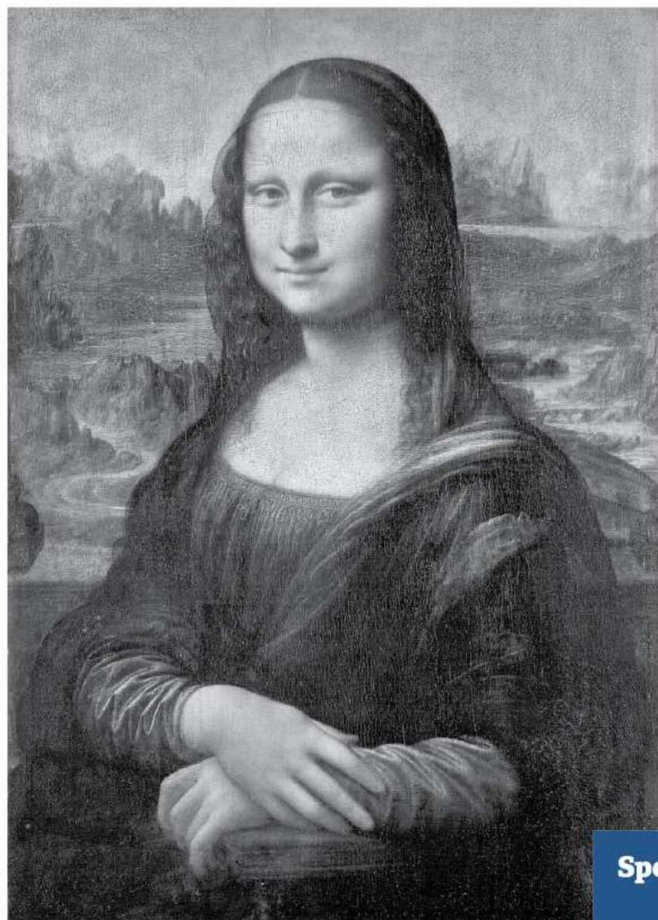
essential fascinating horrible huge impossible  
outstanding terrible tiny

A: Should I visit the museums in Paris?

B: Yes, it's <sup>1</sup> ..... that you go to at least one, like the Louvre.

A: Why?

B: The art you can see there is <sup>2</sup> ..... And you learn interesting facts and find out some <sup>3</sup> ..... history. The painting of the Mona Lisa is fantastic, but <sup>4</sup> ..... Really small!! And the crowds make it <sup>5</sup> ..... to see it.



## How to ...

### ask for and give opinions and reasons

#### 2 A 6.06 | Listen to the recording. Write what you hear. You will hear the sentences only once.

- 1 .....
- 2 .....
- 3 .....
- 4 .....
- 5 .....

#### B Match the sentences in Ex 2A with their purposes.

- |                         |                        |
|-------------------------|------------------------|
| a asking for an opinion | d giving a reason      |
| b giving an opinion     | e agreeing to disagree |
| c asking for a reason   |                        |

#### 3 6.07 | Listen and choose the correct answer.

The man **liked** / **didn't like** the film.

## PRONUNCIATION

#### 4 6.08 | intonation for expressing opinions | Listen and choose the word that is stressed the most.

- 1 I thought it was terrible.
- 2 In my view, the acting was good.
- 3 For me, that doesn't make a good film.

## SPEAKING

#### 5A 6.09 | Number the sentences in the correct order. Then listen and check.

- A: Why did you think that? 5
- B: Do you? I suppose we're all different. ....
- A: Oh yes? What did you think of it? ....
- B: Because the story was hard to understand. ....
- A: What was the last film you saw? 1
- B: In my view, the acting was good, but there was very little speaking. It was all action. For me, that doesn't make a good film. ....
- A: Really? I like a lot of action in my films! ....
- B: It was that action film that came out on Friday. I saw it at the weekend. ....
- A: Oh dear, that's not good. How was the acting? ....
- B: I thought it was terrible. ....

#### B 6.10 | You are B in the conversation in Ex 5A. Listen and speak after the beep. Record the conversation if you can.

#### C Listen to your recording and compare it to the model in Ex 5A.





# Lesson 6D

GRAMMAR | present perfect + *for, since* and *yet*

READING | creative science

## GRAMMAR

### present perfect + *for, since* and *yet*

**1 A** Choose the correct word or phrase to complete the sentences.

- We ..... here since 6 o'clock this morning.  
a were      b 've been      c 'd been
- I ..... at a bank, but now I'm a shop manager.  
a work      b worked      c 've worked
- Jack hasn't finished his homework .....  
a already      b since      c yet
- I ..... Beth since we were little.  
a 've known      b know      c knew
- We've lived here ..... twenty years.  
a for      b since      c yet
- Ariana and Mac have played tennis together ..... they were children.  
a yet      b for      c since

**B** Complete the sentences with the correct present perfect simple or past simple form of the verbs in brackets.

- My dad ..... (have) the same glasses since I was a child.
- I ..... (take) guitar lessons for a few months last year.
- We ..... (not finish) our work yet.
- I ..... (not see) you for months. How are you?
- Ellie ..... (not be) well since her holiday.
- I've wanted to learn how to do this since I ..... (be) a child.

## READING

**2 A** Read the article. What is the writer's main point?

- We should give awards to the scientists who do the most creative work.
- Schools should teach creativity in science and not just prepare students for tests.
- It's important for scientists to study art.

**B** Complete each sentence with one or two words.

- The writer believes that we usually connect creativity more to ..... than science.
- Albert Einstein compared scientists to .....
- The writer uses the example of the Ig Nobel Prize to show that science ..... can be fun as well as serious.
- Some scientists studied the problem people have with the ..... of other people eating.
- Many scientists think that more people will take science subjects at ..... if it is taught at school with more creativity.
- The writer asks how we can check that all school ..... are creative.

## Creative science

When we think of creativity, we usually think of the arts, not science. Science, we often think, is about doing experiments that follow rules, and looking at a lot of data. But these activities only describe one part of science. Before scientists can test their ideas and look at data, they first need to think of ideas, and this needs a lot of imagination. Albert Einstein once described the greatest scientists as artists.

Just look at the winners of the Ig Nobel Prize, and you'll see just how creative scientists can be. These prizes are given to scientists who did research which first makes people laugh, and then makes them think. They might seem to be just fun experiments, but many actually produce very useful results.

For example, there was a group of scientists who won the Ig Nobel Prize for their study of drivers shouting and getting angry with other drivers. It might seem funny, but it's important to understand this better for road safety. There were also the three prize-winning scientists who did some research where people listened to other people eating. They discovered that there is a medical problem called misophonia. For some people, the sound of people eating is really stressful and can make them ill.

For those scientists to get such results, they needed to have an idea, and that idea needed creativity. Some people are worried that there's too much of a focus on exams in school science and not enough on creativity, and so young people are getting the wrong idea about what science is. They're not developing the imagination they need to work in science, and they're becoming less interested in the subject because it doesn't seem very interesting. This often means students stop studying science as soon as they finish school. Many scientists think that more time for creativity in science lessons will help young people to develop creative skills, enjoy science more and continue to study science at university.

Just go online and you can see the number of creative science videos which show presenters creating strange and wonderful things that make you shout 'Wow!'. There are probably many science teachers doing similar things in their classroom for their students. The question is how we make sure that all science lessons include this kind of creativity to get young people to see just how imaginative science can be.



## GRAMMAR

## 1 Choose the correct word or phrase to complete the sentences.

- The driver ..... damaged my car has never said sorry.  
a which      b whose      c who
- Jenny is the woman ..... son is an actor.  
a that      b who      c whose
- There's never a time ..... I feel full of energy.  
a when      b where      c which
- I love going to places ..... I can go birdwatching.  
a which      b where      c who
- It's nice to spend time with friends ..... have similar interests as you.  
a who      b whose      c which
- I've downloaded an app ..... helps me to eat healthier food.  
a which      b who      c whose

## 2 Complete the reported speech.

- 'I've never met Jamie before now.'  
She said she ..... before then.
- 'I'm cooking dinner tonight.'  
He said he ..... that night.
- 'We're going out this evening.'  
She said they ..... that evening.
- 'I'll probably see Alex later.'  
She said she ..... later that day.
- 'I can't do it right now!'  
He told me that he ..... right then.
- 'I need to get some sleep tonight!'  
She told me that she ..... that night.

## 3 The sentences below have a mistake. Choose the best option to correct the mistake.

- We didn't used to want a pet, but we do now.  
a never use to      b didn't use to      c used to
- Lori used love riding horses when she was young.  
a use to love      b use love      c used to love
- Used you to go to school here?  
a Did you used to      b Were you used to      c Did you use to
- I use to go to college for three years.  
a used to go      b went      c did went

4 Complete the sentences with *will*, *might* or the correct form of *be going to*.

- The coffee machine's making a terrible noise. I'm sure it ..... break.
- Bella ..... come round for dinner later, but I'm not sure.
- So, I ..... see you tonight at 8 p.m. as planned. I'm looking forward to it.
- Lisa ..... probably call me when she gets home. She usually does.
- It starts at 9 p.m. and it's 8.55 now. It takes over ten minutes to get there, so we ..... be late.
- I can't be certain, but Oscar ..... give you a call later.

## 5 Complete the sentences with the comparative or superlative form of the words in brackets.

- This bag is £500! That bag is £500!  
The bags are ..... each other! (expensive)
- I'm 165 cm tall. You're 185 cm tall.  
I'm ..... you. (not tall)
- Kate runs 5 km in 25 minutes. Becky runs 5 km in thirty-two minutes.  
Becky runs ..... Kate. (slow)
- Ben lives 25 km away. Thierry lives 40 km away. Mandy lives 50 km away.  
Mandy lives ..... away of all of us. (far)
- I've had good and bad pizzas. This is the first terrible one that I've had.  
This is ..... pizza I've ever eaten. (bad)
- I'm quite a careful driver. My sister is very careful.  
My sister drives ..... me. (careful)

## 6 For each question, write the correct answer. Write one word for each gap.

## A creative games designer

Kenzo Watanabe has been a games designer

<sup>1</sup> ..... 2005. After working at a small company for five years, he started his own company, which he's owned <sup>2</sup> ..... over ten years. During that time, he <sup>3</sup> ..... created some really popular game apps that millions of people around the world <sup>4</sup> ..... downloaded.

Watanabe's company is now earning a lot of money, but Watanabe says that he's not interested in money. He creates games because he loves playing them himself, and he always tries to make ones <sup>5</sup> ..... he wants to play. Maybe this is why people believe he is one of the <sup>6</sup> ..... creative games designers in the industry at the moment, and why so many people look forward to the new games he produces.



## VOCABULARY

- 7 Complete the social media posts with the correct verb. The first letter is given.

BIG NEWS! Abby and I <sup>1</sup>g..... engaged last night. We hope you'll all come and see us <sup>2</sup>g..... married next year.

I <sup>3</sup>p..... my driving test, so watch out drivers!

Daniel <sup>4</sup>g..... from university today. We're very proud!

We've <sup>5</sup>h..... our baby – a little boy. Mother and baby are doing fine.

I can't believe United <sup>6</sup>w..... that match. They weren't the best team.

I <sup>7</sup>b..... my phone this morning. It fell out of my bag and now it doesn't work. 😞

After two years of hard work, I finally <sup>8</sup>g..... promoted. 😊

Thanks to everyone who <sup>9</sup>c..... my birthday with me yesterday. It was fun.

- 8 Match the sentence halves.

- 1 I hate sitting in a traffic
  - 2 We donate money
  - 3 I try to recycle as much of
  - 4 Gary and I had a huge
  - 5 My last social media post got
  - 6 People are talking about climate
  - 7 We need to plan for possible natural
  - 8 Some people think this news
- a argument at work yesterday.
  - b disasters in the future.
  - c to charity once a month.
  - d about the government is fake.
  - e over 300 likes.
  - f jam every morning.
  - g change a lot these days.
  - h my waste as possible.

- 9 Complete the conversation using words from the box.

activists environment headline huge levels  
online rubbish skilful

- A: Did you see the news story posted <sup>1</sup>..... earlier?  
 B: No, what was it?  
 A: Someone's building a hotel here, but not a small one, a <sup>2</sup>..... one.  
 B: Won't it damage the <sup>3</sup>.....?  
 A: Yes, people are worried about higher <sup>4</sup>..... of pollution. More tourists means more <sup>5</sup>..... left on the beach.

- 10 A Replace the words in bold with the words in the box.

architect audience composer studio subject  
venues

- 1 When an artist wants to create a piece of art, they go to a **painter**.
- 2 A theatre, an art gallery and a restaurant are all examples of **recordings**.
- 3 An **artist** is a group of people who watch a performer.
- 4 An **image** is a person who designs buildings.
- 5 The **drawing** of a painting is the main person or thing in it.
- 6 A **dancer** is a person who writes music.

- B Choose the correct word(s) to complete the competition advert.

## Talent competition

Are you a <sup>1</sup>**photographic** / **talented** performer? If so, please enter our <sup>2</sup>**imagine** / **talent** show on 17 July at the wonderful <sup>3</sup>**venue** / **works**, the Royal Theatre. There'll be a live <sup>4</sup>**audience** / **recording** there to watch you, and prizes to win. It's a great opportunity to show people who you are and what you can do. We're looking for <sup>5</sup>**artist** / **creative** people, like bands, singers or <sup>6</sup>**dancers** / **subjects**. We're also looking for people to help us organise the show, so if your <sup>7</sup>**art** / **skill** is in organising people, or taking fantastic <sup>8</sup>**photographs** / **drawings** and sharing them on social media, then we'd love your help.

Click [here](#) for more information.

# Lesson 7A

GRAMMAR | first and second conditionals

VOCABULARY | travel and tourism

PRONUNCIATION | contractions

## VOCABULARY

### travel and tourism

#### 1 A Complete the sentences with one word in each gap.

- I don't want to stand in a q..... for hours, just to buy something.
- France is the most popular tourist d..... in the world.
- I've got a few days' holiday next week, so I'm planning a t..... to the coast.
- Let's book a t..... of the city for tomorrow so we can see the main attractions.
- It's a t..... in my family to have lunch together every Sunday.
- We usually go on holiday out of s..... because it isn't busy then.
- I don't like going to tourist areas because of all the people and the traffic j.....
- I prefer a city b..... to a beach holiday.

#### B Complete the conversation using words from the box.

attractions customs festival queues  
season sightseeing souvenir trip

A: I'm bored of the beach. Let's go <sup>1</sup> .....

B: What tourist <sup>2</sup> ..... do you want to see?

A: Maybe a museum.

B: I heard there's a <sup>3</sup> ..... tomorrow, with singing and dancing. We could learn about local <sup>4</sup> ..... that people follow here.

A: Sounds great! It'll definitely make this short <sup>5</sup> ..... more interesting.

#### C Choose the correct word to complete the email.

< Inbox



We're looking forward to welcoming you to our beautiful hotel <sup>1</sup>**break / resort**. <sup>2</sup>**Check-in / Destination** is after 2 p.m. If you arrive early, we can look after your <sup>3</sup>**backpacker / luggage**. You can then explore our pool area, or look for <sup>4</sup>**monuments / souvenirs** in our gift shop. The <sup>5</sup>**attraction / nightlife** here on the island is amazing, with local music and dancing until late. Bicycles are a great way to get around. If you'd like to <sup>6</sup>**go / rent** one, please ask at reception. Our receptionists can also help with local money. We offer a good exchange <sup>7</sup>**number / rate**. We can also <sup>8</sup>**book / rent** tours for you, too.

We believe you will be very happy with your <sup>9</sup>**accommodation / destination** at our hotel. If you have any questions before you arrive, we'd be happy to answer them.

## GRAMMAR

### first and second conditionals

#### 2 A Choose the correct word or phrase to complete the sentences.

- We'll go on a boat trip this afternoon if we ..... time.  
a 'd have      b 'll have      c have
- We ..... and chat if we could.  
a 'd stay      b 'll stay      c stay
- If you go out without a coat now, you ..... cold.  
a 'd be      b 'll be      c are
- If you could visit one country right now, which .....?  
a is it      b will it be      c would it be
- I'll send you a message when I ..... to the hotel.  
a get      b 'd get      c 'll get
- We'll miss our plane if we ..... up!  
a won't hurry      b wouldn't hurry      c don't hurry

#### B Complete the sentences with the first or second conditional form of the verbs in brackets.

- Mike ..... (take) you to the airport if you can't get a taxi.
- I ..... (not eat) that if I were you.
- If we ever won lots of money, we ..... (buy) a big house near the sea.
- When Lia ..... (arrive), I ..... (start) lunch.
- If Ana ..... (call), I ..... (tell) her you want to speak to her.
- We ..... (can / go) for a walk if it ..... (not be) raining, but it is.
- If I ..... (be) taller, I ..... (be) able to put things on the top shelf.
- When you ..... (visit) us, we ..... (take) you to our favourite restaurant.
- If I ..... (have) a car, I ..... (drive) you home, but I don't.
- I ..... (make) dinner tonight if you ..... (help) me.

## PRONUNCIATION

#### 3 7.01 | contractions | Listen and choose the contraction you hear.

- |            |            |
|------------|------------|
| 1 'll / 'd | 4 'll / 'd |
| 2 'll / 'd | 5 'll / 'd |
| 3 'll / 'd | 6 'll / 'd |



## READING

**4A** Look at the photo. Read the title of the article and the paragraph headings. Choose the correct summary.

- a This is a serious article about businesspeople and how they travel for work.
- b This is a funny online website article about different types of people who go on holiday.
- c This is a short story about a family's trip to a resort and everything that went wrong there.

**B** Answer each question with a heading in the article.

Do NOT read the full article yet.

- 1 Who wants to increase their knowledge?
- 2 Who looks for exciting experiences?
- 3 Who only goes to other places with their partner?
- 4 Who can you find at all the main tourist attractions?
- 5 Who buys a lot of things?
- 6 Who stays out late?
- 7 Who wants ideas for new meals?
- 8 Which people are easy to see because of the way they carry their luggage?

**C** Read the full article to check your ideas. What type of tourist do you think you are?

**D** Read the article again. Are the sentences True (T) or False (F)?

- 1 The shoppers go out most evenings.
- 2 The food lovers like any place that sells food.
- 3 The sightseers worry about seeing everything.
- 4 The culture lovers usually go on a city break.
- 5 The adventurers like to spend time relaxing.
- 6 The backpackers don't always sleep in hotels.
- 7 The love birds take photos just for them to see.
- 8 The party lovers have breakfast much later than other hotel guests.



## What kind of tourist are you?

Visit any popular travel destination and you'll see all different kinds of tourists there, but there are some kinds that are easier to see. Read our descriptions to find out which kind of tourist you are.

### The shoppers

These tourists spend their day at the local shopping centre, looking for bargains. They get back to their accommodation with their hands full of shopping bags and spend their evenings in their room resting their tired feet.

### The food lovers

These tourists are tired of eating the same meals at home every day and are looking for new, exciting tastes they can try to create at home themselves. You can find them in cafés, restaurants and anywhere else you can buy food.

### The sightseers

These are the tourists you see hurrying to a tourist attraction, taking a few selfies and then hurrying to another because they're frightened that they might miss something. You'll often see them travelling on buses, but they might be on foot too – perhaps running!

### The culture lovers

Whether they're in a city, a small town or the country, these tourists spend their time looking around museums, visiting galleries and taking tours of old buildings. They're interested in the arts and history and use their holidays to feed their minds and learn more about the world.

### The adventurers

These tourists don't want to lie on a beach and relax. They want to be in the sea looking for sharks, or jumping out of aeroplanes. They think holidays are a time to take off their suits and have experiences that they'll never forget.



### The backpackers

These tourists are easy to see because of the huge bags they have on their backs. They're usually young, travelling with very little money and staying in cheap accommodation. Or sleeping in train stations.

### The love birds

These tourists only ever travel in pairs. You'll often see them on bridges, taking selfies together. They share their photos online so that everyone can see just how much they love each other.

### The party lovers

You won't see these tourists before 12 p.m. They get up in the afternoon, go out in the evenings and get back just in time to sit with everyone else at the hotel and have breakfast. For them, a holiday is all about having fun with friends.



# Lesson 7B

GRAMMAR | quantifiers

VOCABULARY | new experiences; the natural world

PRONUNCIATION | emphasising quantity

## VOCABULARY

### new experiences

1 Choose the correct word or phrase to complete the sentences.

- Let's go and ..... the area to see what's there.  
a explore      b accept      c expect
- It's ..... that we've never met before when we have the same friends.  
a usual      b clever      c funny
- Did you ..... the interesting monument in the town centre?  
a notice      b realise      c accept
- I'd never heard ..... it before yesterday.  
a to      b for      c of
- We didn't ..... that we had to book a place on the tour so we couldn't go.  
a choose      b realise      c explore
- It's ..... that there were no people in the pool on such a hot day.  
a popular      b surprising      c tired

### the natural world

2A Complete the definitions with one word. The first letter is given.

- A s ..... is a very small river.
- A v ..... is the low land between two hills.
- The c ..... is the land right next to the sea.
- A j ..... is a large forest in a hot place with lots of trees.
- A mountain r ..... is a group of mountains.
- A national p ..... is a place for people to go and see plants, trees and animals.
- The s ..... is the area near the sea where people go to enjoy themselves.
- The c ..... is the land outside of towns.

B Choose the correct word to complete the sentences.

- We used to live in the city, but now we live next to a farm in the **countryside** / **park**.
- Let's go and swim behind the **seaside** / **waterfall**.
- It was hot and wet and the sound of the animals was amazing in the **rainforest** / **stream**.
- I love sitting on the beach at the **seaside** / **valley**.
- We came across a lovely lake in the middle of the national **mountains** / **park**.
- I live on the south **coast** / **stream** and have a good view of the sea.
- There are hills on either side of the **seaside** / **valley**.
- We've got a **rainforest** / **stream** at the end of our garden, but it's not very deep.
- The longest range of **mountains** / **waterfalls** is in the north of the country.
- The hot sun shone through the trees onto the thick plants across the floor of the **coast** / **jungle**.

## GRAMMAR

### quantifiers

3A The sentences below have a mistake. Choose the best option to correct the mistake.

- I'm very tired to think clearly.  
a too      b a bit      c enough
- We haven't got many milk left.  
a plenty of      b much      c hardly
- Emma doesn't have many money to buy a new car.  
a hardly any      b much      c enough
- I've got a few free time later if you want to go out.  
a plenty      b a little      c a lot

B Choose the correct quantifiers to complete the blog.

### Young globetrotter

Before the age of twenty-one, Lexie Alford had travelled to every single country in the world and also appeared in the *Guinness Book of Records*. Lexie grew up with parents in the travel business, so visited <sup>1</sup>**hardly any** / **lots of** different countries as a child – seventy-two in total. In fact, her parents sometimes took her out of school so that they could travel for <sup>2</sup>**a few** / **a little** weeks each year. She studied while she travelled. From the age of twelve, Lexie did <sup>3</sup>**many** / **much** different jobs so she could save <sup>4</sup>**a lot of** / **much** money and travel more. By the time she started travelling on her own, she had <sup>5</sup>**enough** / **too much** money to pay for accommodation, food and transport for <sup>6</sup>**many** / **much** months. She also earned <sup>7</sup>**hardly any** / **a little** money blogging and taking photographs. She says that when she travels, she likes to switch off her phone so she has <sup>8</sup>**plenty of** / **too much** time to look around and meet people. She has seen some <sup>9</sup>**too** / **very** beautiful places on her travels. Not <sup>10</sup>**many** / **much** of these have been popular tourist destinations. Lexie says that she hopes to go back to a lot of them one day.

## PRONUNCIATION

4 7.02 | emphasising quantity | Listen to six conversations. Choose the correct quantifiers.

- There were **a few** / **a lot of** cars.
- There were **not enough** / **too many** people.
- There was **hardly any** / **plenty of** food.
- The man made **many** / **a few** friends.
- There were **a lot of** / **too many** meals.
- The man had **not enough** / **lots of** sleep.



## LISTENING

- 5 **7.03** | Listen to the recording. Choose the words in the text that are different from what you hear.

Monterrey is a city in the north east of Mexico with a population of just over one million. Although it doesn't get the same huge number of tourists as some other Mexican cities, there is plenty to see and do here. In the city centre is a square – one of the largest in the world. It's a place full of interesting buildings, old and new, and pretty gardens. One high point of a visit to Monterrey is a boat trip along a manmade river to Fundidora Park, which is amazing.

- 6A **7.04** | Listen to a conversation about a trip to Monterrey. Tick the topics the speakers discuss.

- 1 Anna's preparation
- 2 The journey there
- 3 Anna's colleagues
- 4 Sightseeing
- 5 The nightlife
- 6 Getting around the city
- 7 The food
- 8 Things Anna found surprising

- B **7.04** | Listen again. Choose the correct option (a–c).

- 1 Anna says that before she went to Monterrey,
  - a she had read a lot about the city online.
  - b she believed that it was smaller than her city.
  - c she hadn't thought about what to expect.
- 2 Anna says the colleagues she met were
  - a similar to each other.
  - b different to other Mexican people.
  - c the same as her usual colleagues.
- 3 Anna's favourite activity was
  - a walking around the city square.
  - b visiting a large park.
  - c taking a boat trip.
- 4 Talking about the food in Monterrey, Anna says
  - a her morning meal was different to normal.
  - b she'd made the same dishes before herself.
  - c there were too many spices in the food.
- 5 Anna was surprised about
  - a the people.
  - b the buildings.
  - c the weather.
- 6 Very soon, Anna hopes to
  - a return to Monterrey.
  - b have a vacation.
  - c go on a long trip.

## WRITING

## a description of an experience

- 7 Read the social media post. Complete the phrases in bold with the words in the box.

expected found to like to take walking was

**Marisa**  
15 April

I recently realised that I've spent more time exploring other countries than I have my own city. So, I decided to book a tour around the city to find out more about it. I'd <sup>1</sup> ..... it to be a bit boring, but it wasn't at all. I <sup>2</sup> ..... the stories about the history **really interesting**, which is funny because I hated history at school. The tour started with a look at the buildings on George Street. I've walked past them lots of times before, but knew nothing about them. I **was excited** <sup>3</sup> ..... a more careful look. The last stop was the art museum. I can't believe I'd never been. It <sup>4</sup> ..... **great! I enjoyed** <sup>5</sup> ..... around and seeing the art. So, try being a tourist in your own town. You might be surprised at what you find.

- 8A Imagine that you take a tour of your own town or city. Think of three or four places to visit. What would you say about them? Make some notes.

- B Write a social media post describing the tour you went on. Say where you went, what you did there and how you felt about it. Use the phrases in Ex 7 to help you. Write 100–140 words.

- 9 Read the question. Then plan, write and review your answer. You must write at least 75 words.

It is better to travel in your own country on holiday than travel abroad.  
Do you agree or disagree with this statement?  
Why/Why not?

# Lesson 7C

HOW TO ... | make and respond to recommendations

VOCABULARY | describing places

PRONUNCIATION | sounding enthusiastic

## VOCABULARY

### describing places

#### 1 A Are the statements True (T) or False (F)?

- 1 A black and white photograph is colourful.
- 2 An old place where important things happened is historical.
- 3 A traditional activity is an activity which started recently.
- 4 A building which is modern is very new.
- 5 Boats and furniture can be wooden.
- 6 A road where four cars can drive next to each other at the same time is narrow.
- 7 A street with lots of traffic noise and people shouting is peaceful.
- 8 A famous person is someone that lots of people around the world know.
- 9 A street where there is only room for one car to go is wide.
- 10 If something is ancient, it belonged to a time long ago in history.

#### B Complete the conversation using words from the box.

ancient colourful modern narrower peaceful  
skillful wide wooden

A: These historical buildings here are so bright and  
1 .....

B: Yes, red, green and yellow! Brighter than the  
2 ..... buildings of today.

A: The streets are very 3 ..... though.

B: Because 4 ..... cities didn't need wide streets. There were no cars!

A: True.

B: And it's so quiet and 5 ..... without noise from the traffic.

## How to ...

### make and respond to recommendations

#### 2 7.05 | Listen to a conversation about Tokyo. Choose the things the man recommends.

- |              |                         |
|--------------|-------------------------|
| a a garden   | e nightlife             |
| b a market   | f a shopping area       |
| c a mountain | g a sport               |
| d a museum   | h traditional buildings |

#### 3 7.05 | Listen again. Complete the sentences with one word in each gap.

- 1 There are a few things you ..... have to see.
- 2 You ..... visit popular shopping areas like Shibuya.
- 3 You should ..... visit some of the traditional buildings, too.
- 4 Don't leave ..... visiting the fish market.
- 5 You ..... see all the fresh fish for sale.
- 6 Make ..... you visit the National Garden in Shinjuku.
- 7 It's a ..... place to walk.
- 8 Karaoke is one of the most ..... things to do in the city.

## PRONUNCIATION

#### 4 7.06 | sounding enthusiastic | Listen to the same response twice. Choose the version (a or b) that sounds more enthusiastic.

- |         |         |         |
|---------|---------|---------|
| 1 ..... | 3 ..... | 5 ..... |
| 2 ..... | 4 ..... |         |

## SPEAKING

#### 5 A Choose the correct words to complete the conversation.

A: I've heard you're going to New York next week. Do you want some recommendations?

B: Yes, please!

A: You <sup>1</sup>**absolutely / very** have to visit the Empire State Building. The view's amazing.

B: Great, thanks.

A: And you <sup>2</sup>**have / should** definitely take a boat and go and see the Statue of Liberty. You get a good view of the city from the water, too.

B: <sup>3</sup>**This / That** sounds good.

A: You must go to a baseball game, to get the real New York experience.

B: That <sup>4</sup>**has / sounds** interesting.

A: I think it's one of the best things you can do. And don't <sup>5</sup>**go / leave** the city without visiting Central Park. You can rent a bicycle and cycle round the park, or you can rent a boat on the lake.

B: Oh wow! <sup>6</sup>**How / What** exciting!

#### B 7.07 | Listen and check.

#### C 7.08 | You are B in the conversation in Ex 5A. Listen and speak after the beep. Record the conversation if you can.

#### D Listen to your recording and compare it to the model in Ex 5B.





# Lesson 7D

GRAMMAR | reflexive pronouns  
LISTENING | tips for travelling

## GRAMMAR

### reflexive pronouns

1 A Choose the correct word or phrase to complete the sentences.

- The children need to behave ..... or I won't be happy.  
a yourselves    b ourselves    c themselves
- Did you hurt ..... when you fell?  
a themselves    b yourself    c myself
- My laptop switched ..... off and now I can't turn it back on.  
a myself    b itself    c himself
- I didn't enjoy ..... much yesterday, but my brother did.  
a myself    b himself    c ourselves
- We cooked for twenty people all by .....  
a myself    b ourselves    c themselves
- My sister made ..... a dress yesterday.  
a herself    b himself    c yourself

B Complete the sentences with a reflexive pronoun.

- I've lived by ..... for a few months.
- James made this cake by ..... Isn't it amazing?
- We introduced ..... to our new neighbours this morning.
- Most people in the team work best by ..... at home.
- Anna made this chair ..... She's very clever.
- The television just came on by ..... I didn't touch it.
- My children made dinner all by ..... this evening.
- You don't need to wait for me to help you. You can do it .....
- Do you like our new curtains? We made them .....
- You can all help ..... to juice in the kitchen.

C Complete the conversation with the correct reflexive pronouns.

- A: Have some of this cake. I made it <sup>1</sup> .....
- B: You made it <sup>2</sup> .....? Really? I didn't know you could bake.
- A: I couldn't, but Sammy and I decided to teach <sup>3</sup> .....
- B: That's great. How did you do it?
- A: We watched some videos online. There was one woman who decided to teach <sup>4</sup> ..... how to make cakes from a book, and a guy who taught <sup>5</sup> ..... how to bake using his grandma's recipes. We copied what they did.
- B: Sounds great. If you and Sammy bake all these things <sup>6</sup> ..... now, I know where to come when I'm hungry!

## LISTENING

2 A 7.09 | Listen to a podcast about travelling. Complete the notes with one word in each gap.



**5 tips for travelling without much.**

- 1 .....
- Get a <sup>2</sup> .....
- Look for cheap <sup>3</sup> .....
- Make your own <sup>4</sup> .....
- If you need transport, take a <sup>5</sup> .....
- Connect with people <sup>6</sup> .....

B 7.09 | Listen to the podcast again. Are the statements True (T) or False (F)?

- The presenter says that if we follow his advice, we'll be able to stay in five-star hotels.
- He says that when you travel and work, your accommodation is always free.
- He says that it's important to find out a lot about a room before you book it.
- He believes that if you want to try local food, you have to eat at a café or restaurant.
- He suggests that it's a good idea to make your own meals even without a kitchen.
- He says that getting the bus is the cheapest possible way to get around.
- He suggests that it's a good idea to buy an all-day bus ticket.
- He says that friends of your friends might offer you a place to stay.

3 7.10 | Listen to the recording. Write what you hear. You will hear the sentences only once.

- 1 .....
- 2 .....
- 3 .....
- 4 .....

# Lesson 8A

GRAMMAR | *can, could, be able to*

VOCABULARY | practical abilities; abilities: phrasal verbs

PRONUNCIATION | weak forms of *can, could* and *be able to*

## VOCABULARY

### practical abilities; abilities: phrasal verbs

1 Choose the correct word or phrase to complete the sentences.

- Can you help me ..... how many plants we need in this part of the garden?  
a design      b calculate      c solve
- If we work hard, we can ..... the problem.  
a solve      b put up      c arrange
- With a bit of paint, it's easy to ..... something old into something that looks new.  
a put      b design      c turn
- Shall I ..... these photos onto the website?  
a put on      b upload      c install
- I ..... for someone to fix our shower.  
a arranged      b replaced      c designed
- The heating system in the house is broken, so I'm planning to ..... a new one.  
a install      b repair      c replace

2A Match the sentence halves.

- I'm looking
  - Everyone in our class gets
  - I can't work
  - We need to come
  - Lee's going to set
  - I think I need to take
  - I'm surprised that you've picked
  - I've turned
- a out how to use my new phone.  
b up his own business.  
c on very well with each other.  
d after my little sister today.  
e up a sport and get fit.  
f my old jeans into shorts.  
g up with a new song for our next concert.  
h up golf so quickly.

B Replace the words in bold with phrasal verbs in the box.

come up with   got on   looked after   made up  
picked up   set up   took up   work out

- I **started doing** a new hobby last week.
- I **learnt** Spanish quite quickly when I lived in Mexico.
- My grandparents **started** this company in 1978.
- None of the story is true. I **invented** the whole thing.
- We **cared for** our friend's cat while he was on holiday.
- I need to **think of** an idea for our next project.
- We can't **understand how to do** this puzzle.
- I've always **had a good relationship** with my partner's family.

## GRAMMAR

### *can, could, be able to*

3A Choose the correct word or phrase to complete the sentences.

- I tried to fix my bike yesterday, but I ..... do it.  
a couldn't      b not able to      c can't
- We're learning Chinese, but we ..... speak it well.  
a aren't able      b couldn't      c can't
- After failing twice, I finally ..... pass my driving test yesterday.  
a can      b could      c was able to
- I know how to put up shelves, but I ..... do anything else around the house.  
a not able to      b can't      c couldn't
- I ..... move my arm much yesterday, but now it's fine.  
a couldn't      b can't      c was able to
- I'm not normally good at tennis, but I ..... win a match against my uncle last week.  
a was able to      b could      c can

B Complete the posts with *can, could* or *be able to* and the verbs in brackets.



**BlueCat** 09.43

I <sup>1</sup> ..... (catch) things that are falling before they hit the ground. What's your unusual skill?



**HallieY** Just now

When I was young, I <sup>2</sup> ..... (make) a noise with my mouth that sounded like a dog. People thought it was real. Sadly, I <sup>3</sup> ..... (not do) it now.



**LilVal** 09.57

When I was young, I <sup>4</sup> ..... (write) with my left hand as well as my right hand. One time, for fun, I started writing an essay with my left hand and <sup>5</sup> ..... (complete) it. The teacher didn't notice! I <sup>6</sup> ..... (not remember) what mark I got for the essay, but I think it was quite good!


## PRONUNCIATION

4 8.01 | weak forms of *can, could* and *be able to* | Listen and complete the conversations.

- A: <sup>1</sup> ..... you swim when you were a child?  
B: No, I <sup>2</sup> ....., but I <sup>3</sup> ..... swim well now.  
A: <sup>4</sup> ..... you able to help me for a minute?  
B: Sorry, I <sup>5</sup> ..... I <sup>6</sup> ..... help you tonight.  
A: <sup>7</sup> ..... you able to see the dentist yesterday?  
B: Yes, I <sup>8</sup> .....




## LISTENING

- 5**  **8.02** | Listen to the recording. Choose the words in the text that are different from what you hear.

*The Wood Workshop* is not a video channel I ever thought I'd like, but I do. The presenter shows us how to make different things from wood. We never see the person's face, or hear their voice, we only see their arms, the wood and some tools. The videos last for over fifty minutes, which is longer than other similar videos, but because I don't want to miss seeing the finished result, I watch to the very end.



- 6A**  **8.03** | Listen to a podcast about watching people make things. Are the statements True (T) or False (F)?

- 1 Ed and Jo both enjoy watching people making things.
- 2 Jo says that she can make the things she sees in videos.
- 3 Ed says that he enjoys watching videos of sports.
- 4 Jo says that the way cakes are made at home and on videos is the same.
- 5 Ed says that videos of people making things helps him feel relaxed.
- 6 Ed and Jo agree to learn a new skill.

- B**  **8.03** | Listen again. Complete the sentences with one word in each gap.

- 1 Jo says she recently watched a video where someone made a ball out of .....
- 2 Jo describes the people who make things in videos as .....
- 3 Jo says that some videos are more interesting than others because we can ..... the end result.
- 4 Ed says that he watches people making things after an ..... day at work.
- 5 Jo would like to learn how to make something with .....
- 6 Ed would like to make things with .....

## WRITING

### an anecdote

- 7** Complete the anecdote with sequencing phrases in the box.

after a few lessons   at first  
at the age of twenty-five   before we could  
I can still   these days   when I was about eleven

<sup>1</sup> ....., we had to make a metal ring at school. <sup>2</sup> ..... start working on it, the teacher cut out the shape for us, because it was too dangerous for us to do it ourselves. Our job was to use a simple machine to make all the metal nice and smooth. <sup>3</sup> ....., I enjoyed it, but <sup>4</sup> ..... it got boring. Finally, the teacher said we could take the rings home. I gave mine to my dad. <sup>5</sup> ....., I imagine it's sitting in a cupboard somewhere!

Now, <sup>6</sup> ....., I'm better at making things than I used to be. <sup>7</sup> ..... remember how to use the machine too, so I'd like to think I'd do a much better job now.

- 8A** Plan to write an anecdote about a time you made something. Decide the following things.

- what you made and when you made it
- what happened during the experience
- if you enjoyed it
- what the result was
- where the thing you made is now

- B** Write your anecdote in 100–140 words. Use the phrases in Ex 7 to help you.



# Lesson 8B

GRAMMAR | active and passive

VOCABULARY | video collocations; technology 1

PRONUNCIATION | emphasising important information

## VOCABULARY

### video collocations

- 1 Complete the conversation using words from the box.

clips commented installed liked made  
podcast shared solved

- A: Have you seen the film that Ella <sup>1</sup> .....  
using her phone camera? She used an app to put  
all the <sup>2</sup> ..... together.  
B: Yes, it's amazing. I've <sup>3</sup> ..... it with all my  
friends.  
A: Lots of people have <sup>4</sup> ..... on it and I even  
heard someone mention it in a <sup>5</sup> .....

### technology 1

- 2A Choose the correct word(s) to complete the sentences.

- Did you remember to **put up** / **shut down** my laptop when you finished using it?
- If your screen freezes, the best thing to do is to **restart** / **undo** the computer.
- I'll **edit** / **unplug** the clips of us on holiday together to make one video.
- If you make a mistake, you can **charge** / **undo** it with this button here.
- Can I plug my phone in here to **charge** / **install** it?
- Press / **Switch** this button to turn the tablet on.

- B Complete the instructions with one word in each gap. The first letter is given.

## How to get started with your new laptop

First, <sup>1</sup>p..... the laptop in. Then,  
<sup>2</sup>s..... it on by pressing the button.  
Follow the instructions on the screen. Note that  
we have already <sup>3</sup>i..... some software  
onto your laptop.

You can <sup>4</sup>u..... your laptop from the wall  
and use the battery, but be careful it doesn't  
<sup>5</sup>r..... out of power. Always <sup>6</sup>c.....  
it before you have no battery at all, so that you  
don't lose any of your work.

If your laptop stops working, reboot it. This means  
you <sup>7</sup>s..... it off and then back on again.  
This will often solve the problem.

## GRAMMAR

### active and passive

- 3A The sentences below have a mistake. Choose the best option to correct the mistake.

- The film has already edited.  
a been edited b was edited c is edited
- The video is downloaded at the moment.  
a are b being c is being
- Did you told about the film meeting yesterday?  
a Have you b Are you being c Were you
- I am interviewed for an IT job yesterday.  
a were b was c have been

- B Complete the second sentence so it means the same as the first sentence. Use the passive form. Pay attention to the words in bold.

- A reporter **asked** me some questions.  
I ..... some questions by a reporter.
- I think that woman **is filming** us.  
I think we ..... by that woman.
- The teacher **hasn't given** us any homework.  
We ..... any homework by the teacher.
- The manager **tells** us about new projects.  
We ..... about new projects by the manager.
- Someone **is making** a video over there.  
A video ..... over there.
- Has** anyone **asked** you to edit the video clips?  
Have you ..... to edit the video clips yet?

- C Complete the facts with the the active or passive form of the verbs in brackets.

### Surprising facts about video

Every minute, over 500 hours of video <sup>1</sup> .....  
(share) on just one video sharing website.

This website <sup>2</sup> ..... (use) by over 2 billion  
people each month of every year.

More than 1 billion hours of video <sup>3</sup> .....  
(watch) on that same website in the last 24 hours.

People <sup>4</sup> ..... (watch) 100 billion hours of  
other people playing games online last year.

Billions of dollars <sup>5</sup> ..... (spend) on  
advertising on video websites right at this moment.

## PRONUNCIATION

- 4 8.04 | **emphasising important information** | Listen and underline the emphasised words in each sentence.

- This cat video has been watched by lots of people.
- Marie has just shown me a really sad video.
- Some of us make our own videos.
- This video was only made this morning.



## READING

### 5A Read the article title. Choose the correct summary.

- a instructions on how to make your own short film
- b information about the most popular online videos
- c advice on ways to get people to watch your video

### B Read the headings in the article. Match the paragraphs (A–E) with the information (1–5).

- 1 when to upload your video
- 2 how long your video should be
- 3 what to do after you've posted your video online
- 4 what to put in your video
- 5 how to get people to look at your video

### C Read the article and check.

# How to get your video seen

Why is it that some videos go viral and are watched by millions of people around the world, but other videos are watched by just a few hundred people? None of us know for sure, but there are a few things we can do to make our videos go viral.

#### A Short and simple

Short videos with simple messages are more likely to go viral than longer videos. One reason is because people quickly lose interest and move onto something else. Another reason is that a short video is less likely to make people feel guilty when they know they have other, more important, things to do.

#### B Make the content worth watching

Successful viral videos don't waste people's time. They teach people something, make them laugh or make them have strong feelings about something. You want viewers to go away thinking that your video was useful or important in some way and that it will be for their friends, too. Then, they'll be more likely to share it.

#### C Getting people interested from the start

Videos are all over social media, so you need to get people's interest from the start. This means three things. First, a title that makes the video sound attractive. Don't promise something that doesn't happen because people find that annoying. The second is an interesting thumbnail. The thumbnail is the image people see before the video starts. You can get an image from anywhere in your video – choose something that will make viewers interested in what happens and want to click 'play'. The third thing is to make sure the start of the video gets people interested too, so they keep watching.

### D Complete the sentences with one word in each gap.

The paragraph is given in brackets.

- 1 Viral videos are usually short and share a ..... idea. (A)
- 2 When people watch videos instead of doing other things they should be doing, they can feel ..... (A)
- 3 If people think a video is useful, they might ..... it with friends. (B)
- 4 A video title shouldn't ..... something that's not in the video. (C)
- 5 You want people to see the beginning of the video and feel ..... in what comes next. (C)
- 6 A popular time to post a video is at the beginning of the ..... (D)
- 7 A bad time to post a video is during the weekend because viewers might be ..... (D)
- 8 It's a good idea to look closely at the ..... to understand the best time to post videos. (E)



#### D Timing is everything

Don't upload your video at 2 a.m. when you can't sleep. Post it at a time when most people are likely to see it. Lots of video makers choose early in the week, because that's when people work or study, and when they take breaks they look at their social media pages. At the weekend, people might be busy doing other things.

#### E Don't just sit back once you've uploaded your video

Don't just post your video and hope for the best. Look at the data and learn more about when videos are watched and shared. Learn from this, try different things and then work out what's best for your audience.



# Lesson 8C

HOW TO ... | describe a problem and make recommendations

VOCABULARY | technical problems; technology 2

PRONUNCIATION | contrastive stress

## VOCABULARY

### technical problems

- 1 Complete the conversation using words from the box.

attachment broke connection crashed cut  
file password working

A: I hate technology. My laptop <sup>1</sup> ..... earlier  
and I had to restart it. Then, my email wasn't  
<sup>2</sup> ..... I'd used the wrong <sup>3</sup> .....!  
B: I've had problems, too. I sent an important email  
without including an important <sup>4</sup> ....., and  
forgot to save a <sup>5</sup> ..... and lost my work.

### technology 2

- 2 Choose the correct word(s) to complete the sentences.
- 1 Is there a **PIN** / **socket** I can plug my phone into?
  - 2 Some of the letters on your **cable** / **keyboard** are in a different place from mine.
  - 3 I can't pay by card. I've forgotten my **PIN** / **screen**.
  - 4 I need a **socket** / **USB storage device** to save these files.
  - 5 I need a **cable** / **keyboard** to connect my phone to my laptop.
  - 6 I can't see anything on the **screen** / **USB storage device** when the sun shines on it.
  - 7 I accidentally deleted an important **file** / **screen** with lots of information on it.
  - 8 I've got a new **socket** / **keyboard** and it's really easy to type on.

## How to ...

### describe a problem and make recommendations

- 3 **8.05** | Listen to three conversations. For each one, match one problem (a–c) with one solution (1–3).

Conversation 1: .....  
Conversation 2: .....  
Conversation 3: .....

- a The phone is damaged.  
b An app doesn't work.  
c The phone needs charging a lot.

- 1 Delete the app.  
2 Close open apps.  
3 Put the phone in some rice.



- 4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1 again / phone / isn't / My / working .
- 2 open / crashes / Every / it / I / time / the app, .
- 3 switching / you / on / Have / it / tried / off / and ?
- 4 problem / phone / There's / my / a / with .
- 5 all your / need / Maybe / close / you / to / apps .
- 6 works / you / sometimes / It / if / that / do .

- 5 **8.06** | Listen to the recording. Write what you hear. You will hear the sentences only once.

- 1 .....
- 2 .....
- 3 .....
- 4 .....

## PRONUNCIATION

- 6 **8.07** | **contrastive stress** | Listen to the words the speaker stresses. Then choose the correct word to complete the sentences.

- 1 The speaker took a **photo** / **video**.
- 2 The speaker **closed** / **deleted** the apps.
- 3 The laptop is **broken** / **working**.
- 4 The speaker **shared** / **downloaded** the video.

## SPEAKING

- 7A Complete the conversation with the phrases in the box.

Have you tried I can't I'll try that It sometimes  
Maybe you need to There's a problem

A: <sup>1</sup> ..... with my phone.  
B: What is it?  
A: <sup>2</sup> ..... use any apps. They take a long time  
to open and then crash.  
B: <sup>3</sup> ..... switching it off and on again?  
A: Yes, but it didn't solve the problem.  
B: Have you deleted any apps you don't need?  
<sup>4</sup> ..... works if do that.  
A: I've tried, but the problem is still there.  
B: <sup>5</sup> ..... save everything to your computer,  
delete everything from your phone and start again.  
A: Yes, <sup>6</sup> ..... Thanks.

- B **8.08** | Listen and check.

- C **8.09** | You are B in the conversation in Ex 7A. Listen and speak after the beep. Record the conversation if you can.

- D Listen to your recording and compare it to the model in Ex 7B.





# Lesson 8D

GRAMMAR | *-ing form*

READING | the best ways to learn a language

## GRAMMAR

### *-ing form*

**1 A** Choose the correct word or phrase to complete the sentences

- 1 I wouldn't mind ..... to the cinema tonight.  
a to go      b go      c going
- 2 We like ..... a cooked breakfast at the weekends.  
a to having      b have      c to have
- 3 Jack suggests ..... an app to learn new vocabulary.  
a using      b use      c to use
- 4 I'm looking forward ..... your parents.  
a to meet      b meeting      c to meeting
- 5 Ella's delayed ..... to London until tomorrow.  
a travelling      b to travel      c travel
- 6 We began ..... for a new flat this morning.  
a looking      b look to      c to looking

**B** Choose the correct option (a or b) to complete the sentences. Sometimes both are correct.

- 1 I recommend ..... songs in English.  
a listen      b listening to
- 2 I'm going to Italy next week. I'm looking forward to ..... my Italian.  
a improving      b improve
- 3 My brother really hates ..... his company car.  
a to drive      b driving
- 4 I make sure I ..... in English at least once a day.  
a to practise      b practise
- 5 ..... going! Don't stop!  
a To keep      b Keep
- 6 I can't stand ..... for long.  
a sit down      b sitting down
- 7 I remember ..... you for the first time in 2019.  
a to meet      b meeting
- 8 I wouldn't mind ..... a course in Arabic.  
a taking      b to take

## READING

**2 A** Read the article. Choose the best title.

- a Reasons why you should learn a second language
- b The best activities for learning a second language
- c How our brains work when we speak two languages

Learning a second language takes a lot of time and energy, but there are many advantages. Firstly, it helps us to communicate in our first language. When I learnt to speak Italian, I became a better speaker of English because I started to think more about the language I use. I also became better at listening, because speaking a second language meant I had to listen more carefully to people I spoke to. There's research that suggests a second language can increase the vocabulary in our first language too.

Learning a language is also good for brain development. It helps us to have a better memory, and to keep it for longer when we get older. It helps us to think in a more creative way, which is great for coming up with ideas for solving problems. Also, when we can speak a second language, we become better at doing several tasks at the same time.

In this international world we live in, learning other languages can also improve our chances of getting a good job. And once we're in work, it can help us to get paid more. These days, people around the world can work together without needing to get on flights. This means that there are more and more business teams with people from different countries. So, companies often look for and keep staff who speak more than one language. This is something that I found was true last year when I got my dream job because I spoke Italian.

Now that I've learnt another language, I find that I'm more interested in learning about other cultures. Knowing other languages allows me to be more comfortable when I travel and have more fun, too. I don't always speak the language of the countries I visit, but I find it easier to connect to the people I meet. I know we can have a conversation with just a few words and some body language. A smile is important, too.

So, why am I telling you all of this? Well, it's my way of saying 'go and learn another language if you haven't yet'. It won't be easy, but you'll learn so much that you'll be happy you did, just like me.

**B** Choose the benefits of learning a second language that the writer discusses.

- 1 It improves communication in our first language.
- 2 It helps us to remember things better.
- 3 It improves how we find information online.
- 4 It helps us to do more than one thing at one time.
- 5 It gives us a better chance of finding work.
- 6 It can increase our level of pay.
- 7 It improves the decisions we make.
- 8 It allows us to enjoy travelling more.



## GRAMMAR

1 The sentences below have a mistake. Choose the best option to correct the mistake.

- If I didn't see Jan tomorrow, I'll see him on Friday.  
a wouldn't see    b don't see    c won't see
- We'd live abroad if we have the chance.  
a 'll have    b would have    c had
- I give you a call when I know more about the situation.  
a 'll give    b would give    c gave
- If I lost my glasses, I won't be able to see a thing!  
a didn't    b don't    c wouldn't

2 Choose the correct quantifiers to complete the online comments.

## Your video viewing

We asked people about the number of videos they watch each week. Here are some of the things they told us.

'I spend too <sup>1</sup>**many** / **much** time watching silly videos about nothing.'

Gina, 24

'I watch <sup>2</sup>**a few** / **a little** videos each week, but I don't have <sup>3</sup>**enough** / **many** time to watch more.'

Trevor, 61

'I watch <sup>4</sup>**a bit of** / **hardly any** videos. I'm not on social media or anything like that.'

Miriam, 34

'I watch <sup>5</sup>**a lot of** / **much** videos about cats. They're <sup>6</sup>**very** / **too** funny.'

Jacob, 16

'I don't have <sup>7</sup>**much** / **plenty of** time during the week, but I watch videos at the weekend when I do have <sup>8</sup>**much** / **plenty of** time. There are <sup>9</sup>**enough** / **too many** videos to choose from. It's hard to pick.'

Elsa, 27

3 Complete the sentences with the correct reflexive pronoun.

- Tom, you should give ..... more time to relax.
- The window just closed by .....
- I don't remember this film ....., but Jon says I've seen it.
- Shall we help ..... to some cake? It looks really delicious!
- You and Bella can make ..... some pizza for lunch.
- Our neighbours just bought ..... a new car.

4 Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

can    can't    could    couldn't    was able  
wasn't able

- I ..... swim for hours when I was a child. I loved it!
- Isabella ..... to get into her flat last night. She'd lost her key.
- I ..... play the piano quite well these days.
- I ..... hear you very clearly on the phone yesterday.
- Great news! Ricardo ..... to find a new job last month.
- Sam ..... drive, but he'd like to be able to.

5 Choose the correct verb forms to complete the sentences. Sometimes both are correct.

- I recommend **trying** / **to try** that new Italian restaurant.
- I began **learning** / **to learn** Japanese last week.
- We're looking forward to **hearing** / **hear** about your trip.
- I wouldn't mind **seeing** / **to see** Amelie again.
- We need to keep **moving** / **to move** if we don't want to be late.
- My brother hates **working** / **to work** nights.

6 Complete the article with the present simple active or passive form of the verbs in brackets.

## How a new smartphone is made

Many of us own a smartphone, and use it every day, but not all of us know how a smartphone is made. The process is simple but takes a long time. First, a design <sup>1</sup>..... (agree) on paper. The different parts of the design for just one phone <sup>2</sup>..... (make) and then these parts <sup>3</sup>..... (put) together. We <sup>4</sup>..... (call) this a *prototype*. The prototype <sup>5</sup>..... (pass) around people who look at the design. After they <sup>6</sup>..... (give) their opinion, some changes are made to make the design better. Once everyone is happy, the screen, battery and cameras <sup>7</sup>..... (add). Software <sup>8</sup>..... (install) onto the phone and the phone <sup>9</sup>..... (test) very carefully. When everything is working well, the company <sup>10</sup>..... (produce) the phone in large numbers.





## VOCABULARY

- 7 Complete the words in the email. Some letters are given.

⏮ ⏭
↶ ⭐ 🗑

Hi Helen,

We finally reached our <sup>1</sup>d \_\_\_\_ s \_\_\_\_ t \_\_\_\_ after a long flight and we're having a really great time. The <sup>2</sup>r \_\_\_\_ s \_\_\_\_ we're staying at was only built last year, so it's very <sup>3</sup>m \_\_\_\_ d \_\_\_\_ , with huge glass windows.

The <sup>4</sup>a \_\_\_\_ m \_\_\_\_ d \_\_\_\_ t \_\_\_\_ is good with comfortable beds, and because there aren't many guests at the moment, it's very <sup>5</sup>p \_\_\_\_ f \_\_\_\_ l \_\_\_\_ . The area is very pretty and the <sup>6</sup>n \_\_\_\_ t \_\_\_\_ f \_\_\_\_ is great from 9 p.m. onwards – lots of places to eat and dance. We <sup>7</sup>r \_\_\_\_ t \_\_\_\_ bicycles yesterday – it was quite cheap – and we cycled along the beach area.

We're <sup>8</sup>g \_\_\_\_ sightseeing today to visit some of the tourist <sup>9</sup>a \_\_\_\_ t \_\_\_\_ s, and we've <sup>10</sup>b \_\_\_\_ k \_\_\_\_ a boat tour round the island for tomorrow.

Hope you're well. See you soon!

Mads

- 8A Match the descriptions (1–6) with the places they describe (a–f).

- 1 It was beautiful and blue, and fell from the middle of the mountain into the place where we were swimming.
- 2 We looked down at the land below us and the sun shining on the fields.
- 3 It was thick with trees, and all around us, we could hear the sounds of animals.
- 4 We watched the tiny fish as they swam down the narrow bit of water.
- 5 We drove along the narrow road and looked to our left at the blue ocean below us.
- 6 I breathed in the smell of the sea as we sat in the sand and looked out to the ocean.

- |             |           |
|-------------|-----------|
| a coast     | d stream  |
| b valley    | e seaside |
| c waterfall | f jungle  |

- B Choose the correct word to complete the sentences.

- 1 I'd never heard **of** / **on** this place before yesterday.
- 2 We came **across** / **around** a lovely café on our walk.
- 3 Oh dear, I've just **accepted** / **realised** that I forgot your birthday!
- 4 Did you **explore** / **notice** the sign on that building?
- 5 When I said I was hungry, I didn't **arrange** / **expect** you to buy me lunch.
- 6 Shall we come **design** / **explore** the pool area and go for a swim?

- 9 Choose the correct word or phrase to complete the sentences.

- 1 Can you help me \_\_\_\_ this shelf on the wall?  
a work out    b put up    c take up
- 2 Jon just \_\_\_\_ a fantastic idea for the festival.  
a came up with    b got on with    c set up
- 3 I can't \_\_\_\_ where best to put this desk.  
a make up    b work out    c pick up
- 4 Do you need me to \_\_\_\_ the children this afternoon?  
a look after    b set up    c take up
- 5 We should \_\_\_\_ a new hobby if we have some free time.  
a take up    b come across    c set up
- 6 One day, I hope to \_\_\_\_ and manage my own business.  
a pick up    b make up    c set up

- 10 For each question, choose the correct answer.

### Making a short film

It's easy to make a film these days. All you need is a smartphone, a story and some actors. Once you've <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_ those, you can turn your camera on and start. You'll probably spend one day creating five minutes of film. Make sure you can <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_ your phone into a socket during the day, so it doesn't run out of <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_ . And have the right <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_ so you can connect to a computer and save your files. Do this several times a day so you don't lose anything if your phone crashes. When you've finished filming, use a good app to <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_ your film clips, by cutting or joining them together. When you've finished, save the film so that it's not too big and you can <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_ it to the internet without any problems.

- |                |            |            |            |
|----------------|------------|------------|------------|
| 1 A designed   | B expected | C arranged | D replaced |
| 2 A switch     | B plug     | C share    | D press    |
| 3 A attachment | B clip     | C video    | D charge   |
| 4 A cable      | B keyboard | C podcast  | D screen   |
| 5 A like       | B edit     | C make     | D comment  |
| 6 A undo       | B unplug   | C upload   | D install  |









## VOCABULARY

### people and relationships; personality adjectives

- 7 Complete the description with the words and phrases in the box.

crazy funny generous get on really well  
kind look up to patient serious

I <sup>1</sup> ..... with my uncle Alex and love spending time with him. He looks <sup>2</sup> ....., but he makes me laugh all the time. He's actually really <sup>3</sup> ....., He can be a bit <sup>4</sup> ..... sometimes, too. For example, he loves jumping out of planes! He was a mechanic for fifteen years before he decided to become a full-time musician. I <sup>5</sup> ..... him because he lives his life how he wants to, but at the same time, he's <sup>6</sup> ..... to others. He's also <sup>7</sup> ..... with his money and time. At the moment, he's teaching me to play the guitar. I'm really slow, but he's a very <sup>8</sup> ..... teacher. He never gets angry.

### adjectives for feelings; -ed/-ing adjectives

- 8 Choose the correct words to complete the review.

The plot of Steven Wren's new book *Say Nothing* caught my interest from the start. It was never <sup>1</sup> **boring** / **embarrassing** / **surprising**. In fact, I stayed up late reading it because I wanted to know what happened at the end. I was <sup>2</sup> **calm** / **exhausted** / **exhausting** the next day! I experienced different emotions when reading the book. I was <sup>3</sup> **annoyed** / **proud** / **silly** when bad things happened to the characters and <sup>4</sup> **sleepy** / **jealous** / **upset** when someone's pet died. I was <sup>5</sup> **proud** / **terrified** / **terrifying** when someone did something good and <sup>6</sup> **in love** / **sleepy** / **terrified** something bad would happen to the hero. The romantic part of the story was a bit silly – the hero said he was <sup>7</sup> **in love** / **excited** / **nervous** with someone just an hour after they met! However, the ending of the story is very <sup>8</sup> **bored** / **surprised** / **surprising**. I won't tell you what happens. Go and buy it now!

### knowledge; verbs and nouns

- 9 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets.

- I don't know the answer, but I can have a ..... (guess).
- If we don't find a ..... (solve) to this problem fast, we're going to be in big trouble.
- I find it hard to ..... (memory) new words. They don't stay in my head.
- I know quite a lot about history, but my ..... (know) of science is very poor.
- We can't go out tonight. We have to ..... (revision) for our vocabulary test.

### facilities; places in a city

- 10 Complete the words in the sentences.

- There's a library on the university c ..... p .....
- Do you know where the doctor's s ..... g ..... y is?
- We need to find a p ..... t ..... station and fill the car up.
- You can buy medicine at the c ..... m .....
- We went to a café in the town s ..... r .....

### technology collocations

- 11 Choose the correct word to complete the sentences.

- The video I took earlier has **done** / **gone** viral over the last few hours.
- We're going to **launch** / **send** our website soon.
- Let's **send** / **take** Dan a message.
- Don't **down** / **download** that app. It's terrible.
- Don't forget to **make** / **send** a call to the bank later.

## How to ...

- 12 Complete the conversations with one word in each gap. The first letter is given.

#### ... start and end a conversation

- A: Do you <sup>1</sup> m ..... if I sit here? I'm Freddie.  
B: <sup>2</sup> N ..... to meet you. I'm Luis. Which department are you in?  
A: IT. I work with Jakob.  
B: Great! Freddie, I've got a meeting now. Sorry, I've <sup>3</sup> g ..... to go.  
A: No problem. Nice <sup>4</sup> t ..... to you.

#### ... apologise and give reasons

- A: Sorry to <sup>5</sup> k ..... you waiting. There was a <sup>6</sup> p ..... with my train. It was <sup>7</sup> c ..... and I had to wait for the next one.  
B: Don't <sup>8</sup> w ..... I was late, too.

#### ... make polite enquiries

- A: I'd <sup>9</sup> l ..... to know what time the bus leaves.  
B: The next one is in fifteen minutes.  
A: And could you tell me <sup>10</sup> w ..... it leaves from?  
B: The city bus station.  
A: Great. Do you <sup>11</sup> k ..... how long the bus takes?  
B: About 45 minutes.

- 13 For each question, write the correct answer. Write one word for each gap.

My friend Enzo was <sup>1</sup> ..... of work for a long time. He tried finding a new job, but had no luck <sup>2</sup> ..... one evening in June. He was watching TV when he decided <sup>3</sup> ..... go to the shop for some chocolate. It was the best decision he's <sup>4</sup> ..... made. At the shop he saw an old school friend. <sup>5</sup> ..... friend was looking for a new assistant at her company, so Enzo gave his phone number. She wrote it <sup>6</sup> ..... then called later and invited Enzo to an interview for the position. Some chocolate turned into a new job!

## GRAMMAR

## relative clauses

- 1 Complete the sentences with one word in each gap.
- Jack is the colleague ..... buys me coffee every morning.
  - That's the dog ..... owner lives on my street.
  - I remember the time ..... we got lost in the middle of a forest!
  - I have a laptop ..... I use to do my work on.
  - This is the café ..... I had an amazing lunch last week.
  - There are a few shops here ..... sell nice art.

## reported speech

- 2 Read the lines from a conversation. Then choose the correct word(s) to complete the reported speech.
- 'I've got some amazing news to tell you.'  
Emily said that she **has had** / **had** some amazing news to tell Joe.
  - 'My sister's had her baby.'  
She said that her sister **has** / **had had** her baby.
  - 'Doctors want the baby to stay in hospital for a few days.'  
She told Joe that doctors **have wanted** / **wanted** the baby to stay in hospital for a few days.
  - 'I'm getting married!'  
Emily also told Joe that she **had got** / **was getting** married.
  - 'The wedding won't happen for another two years.'  
She said the wedding **do** / **would** not happen for another two years.
  - 'What a shame! I've just bought a new suit!'  
Joe said it was a shame because he **was buying** / **had bought** a new suit.

## comparatives and superlatives

- 3 Complete the conversation with one word in each gap.


present perfect + *for, since* and *yet*

- 4 Complete the sentences with the present perfect form of the verbs in brackets and *for, since* or *yet*.
- We ..... (live) here ..... last year.
  - I ..... (not see) my parents ..... ages.
  - ..... you ..... (visit) the art exhibition in town .....?
  - Our new manager ..... (not introduce) herself to us .....
  - I ..... (be) good at art ..... I was a child.
  - My neighbour and I ..... (know) each other ..... over ten years.

## quantifiers

- 5 Complete the article with the words in the box.

bit   enough   hardly   many (x2)   much

## 8 things people complain about on holiday

- There are too ..... tourists everywhere.
- There isn't ..... food from my home country.
- There's too ..... sand on the beach.
- There are too ..... noisy restaurants and clubs at night.
- I knew a ..... of the local language, but not enough.
- There are ..... any people who speak my language.

## active and passive

- 6 Choose the correct word(s) to complete the sentences.
- Martin has **uploaded** / **been uploaded** a video of the band at the concert.
  - Over a thousand people **are watching** / **are being watched** your video online right now.
  - Large videos **accepted** / **aren't accepted** on this website.
  - The video **has been deleted** / **has deleted**.
  - The videos on this channel **aren't watched** / **watched** very much.

## VOCABULARY

## news and social media

- 7 Complete the sentences with one word in each gap. The first letter is given.
- A h ..... is the title of a newspaper article.
  - A j ..... is a person who writes for a newspaper.
  - A b ..... p ..... is an article on someone's personal web page.
  - If a newspaper p ..... a story, it prints it or puts it on their website.
  - F ..... news is news which isn't true.
  - If you f ..... something o ....., you discover information about it.



## social issues; the environment

8 Complete the article with the words in the box.

activists campaign donate environment  
levels pollution recycle waste

### City centre traffic stopped

A group of <sup>1</sup>..... stopped traffic for several hours yesterday by putting a large amount of rubbish in the middle of the road – part of a <sup>2</sup>..... to ask people to reduce the amount of <sup>3</sup>..... they create. The group want people to <sup>4</sup>..... more materials like plastic and <sup>5</sup>..... old clothes to local charities so other people can use them. The group is also worried about high <sup>6</sup>..... of air <sup>7</sup>..... from factories. Drivers were unhappy. Many said they understood how important our <sup>8</sup>..... is, but didn't agree with the group's actions.

## extreme adjectives

9 Replace the word(s) in bold in each sentence with the adjectives in the box.

fascinating horrible impossible  
outstanding tiny

- 1 This sandwich is **not nice**.
- 2 Your game is **not easy** to play.
- 3 The level of skill in this painting is **very good**.
- 4 That documentary was **interesting**.
- 5 This shirt is **really small**!

## travel and tourism

10 Choose the correct word(s) to complete the travel tips.

- Choose a <sup>1</sup>**custom** / **destination** with few tourists. You'll find out more about local <sup>2</sup>**culture** / **resorts**.
- Don't just <sup>3</sup>**book** / **go** guided tours. Go by yourself to places that locals visit.
- Read about the history of the buildings and <sup>4</sup>**luggage** / **monuments** you see.
- Don't spend every evening at your <sup>5</sup>**luggage** / **resort**. Experience the local <sup>6</sup>**city breaks** / **nightlife**.

## practical abilities

11 Complete the phrases with the verbs in the box.

arrange put repair solve turn

- 1 ..... a shelf on the wall
- 2 ..... a broken car
- 3 ..... an old wooden box into a bookshelf
- 4 ..... for someone to fix a dishwasher
- 5 ..... a problem with the heating

## How to ...

12 Complete the conversations with the words in the box.

because do hear idea make makes say  
tell tried wonderful working works

### ... give and respond to personal news

- A: I've got some good news to <sup>1</sup>..... I got the job!
- B: That's <sup>2</sup>..... news! I've had some bad news though. The owner of my flat wants me to move out next month.
- A: Oh no! I'm sorry to <sup>3</sup>..... that.

### ... ask for and give opinions and reasons

- A: What do you think of this painting?
- B: I would <sup>4</sup>..... it's OK, but I don't love it.
- A: What <sup>5</sup>..... you say that?
- B: It's <sup>6</sup>..... of the colours. They're too dark.

### ... make and respond to recommendations

- A: When you go to St Petersburg, there's one thing you must <sup>7</sup>..... <sup>8</sup>..... sure you go to the Hermitage Museum. It's one of the best in the world.
- B: OK. That sounds like a good <sup>9</sup>.....

### ... describe a problem and make recommendations

- A: The lift isn't <sup>10</sup>.....
- B: Have you <sup>11</sup>..... pressing the button to open the doors?
- A: Of course!
- B: Press it for longer.
- A: Oh yes. That <sup>12</sup>.....

13 For each question, choose the correct answer.

### Unusual video channels

There's a lot of strange and wonderful <sup>1</sup>..... on video channels. I've followed the journeys of <sup>2</sup>..... travelling around Asia, watched people <sup>3</sup>..... engaged in surprising ways, and watched my favourite vloggers showing me their new clothes. But what about the man who <sup>4</sup>..... up with the idea of sitting and smiling in front of the camera for several hours a day? You might not think he's doing anything <sup>5</sup>....., but he has over 300,000 followers. And what about the channel that shows a machine slowly breaking everyday objects? It sounds boring, but I think it's actually <sup>6</sup>..... to watch!

- |              |            |               |               |
|--------------|------------|---------------|---------------|
| 1 A headline | B content  | C campaign    | D works       |
| 2 A luggage  | B customs  | C backpackers | D audiences   |
| 3 A get      | B have     | C be          | D do          |
| 4 A set      | B got      | C came        | D pick        |
| 5 A skilful  | B fake     | C impossible  | D tiny        |
| 6 A huge     | B horrible | C colourful   | D fascinating |

## GRAMMAR

## verb patterns

- 1 Choose the correct word(s) to complete the article.  
Sometimes both answers are possible.

## A change of career

I come from a family of doctors and for many years I expected <sup>1</sup>**becoming / to become** one, too. I always got good grades at school, so, after <sup>2</sup>**finishing / to finish** university, I began <sup>3</sup>**training / to train** to be a doctor. But, there were some problems. Doctors can't always spend a lot of time <sup>4</sup>**talking / to talk** to their patients and that's what I enjoyed <sup>5</sup>**doing / to do**. I wanted <sup>6</sup>**getting / to get** to know people and take care of them. Because of this, I decided <sup>7</sup>**becoming / to become** a nurse instead. My family were fine with this, but some of my friends were surprised. They seemed <sup>8</sup>**thinking / to think** that it was a mistake. However, I don't miss <sup>9</sup>**being / to be** a doctor at all. I've looked after some amazing people and I'm looking forward to <sup>10</sup>**helping / help** more in the future.

## modifiers

- 2 Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

a bit   lot less   lot more   quite   quite a

- I have ..... good lifestyle.
- My family has a ..... interest in exercise these days. They didn't use to do any sport at all.
- We have ..... relatively good social life.
- I'd love to have a ..... more time for my hobby – just a few more hours a week.
- I'm ..... busy these days.
- We go out a ..... now than in the past. We prefer staying in.

## prepositions of time

- 3 Choose the correct word to complete the sentences.

- I read a lot of stories **during / between / until** I left school.
- I often came up with my own stories **at / during / on** school lessons.
- At / In / On** the summer holidays, I wrote those stories down.
- After / Before / Between** the end of school and the end of university, I only read books about my studies.
- After / At / During** finishing university, I started a new job and had no time to read.
- At / In / On** my 20s, I only read about one book a year.
- Between / In / On** my 30th birthday, I decided to look back at the stories I wrote at school.
- After / During / In** I had read them, I decided to start writing again. I'm now a published writer!

## phrasal verbs

- 4 Choose the correct sentence ending (a or b).  
Sometimes both are possible.

- My alarm went off at 6 a.m., but I  
a switched off it.                      b switched it off.
- When we returned after our holiday, we found that someone had  
a broken our home into.              b broken into our home.
- Some people say that you have good luck if you  
a pick up a coin.                      b pick a coin up.
- I need to go to work on Saturday for an hour. Can you  
a look after the children?              b look the children after?
- Someone called for you earlier. I wrote  
a down the information.              b the information down.
- I didn't need my computer for the rest of the day, so I  
a shut it down.                      b shut down it.

## articles

- 5 Complete the blog post with *a, an, the* or – (no article).

One benefit of having an interest is that it helps us to connect to <sup>1</sup>..... other people. My dad was <sup>2</sup>..... soldier and we moved around quite a lot when I was <sup>3</sup>..... child. I loved making paper art and I spent <sup>4</sup>..... hours creating animals and objects from paper. I wasn't <sup>5</sup>..... best at it, but I enjoyed the process. At <sup>6</sup>..... end of my first day at my new school, I was making <sup>7</sup>..... elephant from paper while I waited for my mum. <sup>8</sup>..... girl came over and asked me what I was doing. I showed her <sup>9</sup>..... elephant. <sup>10</sup>..... girl loved it and asked me how to make one. I showed her, and we became <sup>11</sup>..... good friends. Twenty years later, we still see each other for <sup>12</sup>..... lunch a few times a year!



## present perfect + superlative

- 6 Complete the sentences with the correct superlative and present perfect forms of the verbs in brackets.

- This is ..... (bad) film I ..... (ever / see).
- Andrea's story was ..... (funny) thing I ..... (ever / hear).
- What's ..... (silly) thing Theo ..... (ever / do)?
- You're ..... (happy) you ..... (ever / look).
- That was ..... (nice) thing anyone ..... (ever / say) to me.
- After the marathon, I was ..... (exhausted) I ..... (ever / feel).



## will, might and be going to for predictions

- 7 Complete the conversations with the phrases in the box.

'll probably get 'll wait might rain  
're going to miss 's not going to be  
won't won't begin

- 1 A: Oh no! The bus is already at the bus stop. We  
1 ..... it.  
B: I don't think we will. The bus is early. I'm sure it  
2 ..... for us.
- 2 A: It 3 ..... later. My weather app says there's a  
30% chance.  
B: It 4 .....! It's always sunny on my birthday!
- 3 A: Jack's train is delayed by ten minutes so he  
5 ..... at the cinema before 8.  
B: But he 6 ..... there before the film starts. It  
7 ..... until at least 8.15.

## used to

- 8 Complete the forum post with the correct form of *used to* and the verb in brackets. If *used to* is not possible, use the past simple.

### AlecSmith

Family holidays today are quite different to family holidays in the past. We 1 ..... (not / go) abroad. My parents drove us to the nearest campsite on the coast.

### Mickie88

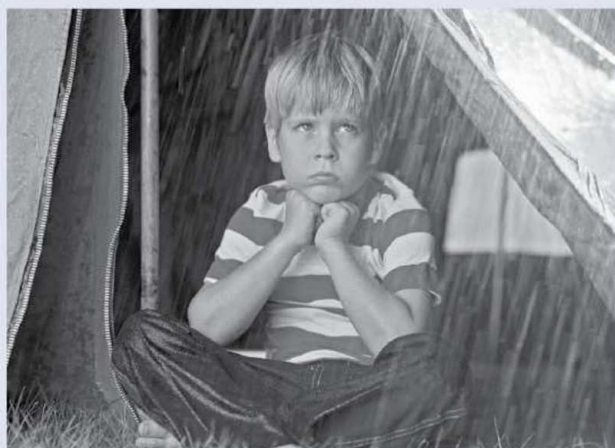
Oh yes! I 2 ..... (love) those holidays! I'm not sure why. We 3 ..... (spend) at least three trips in a tent, watching the rain outside! ☔

### AnaKay

Me, too! My family and I 4 ..... (stay) at a campsite just ten kilometres from our home. One time, it 5 ..... (rain) every day we were there.

### BlueStar

And we had no phones to keep us busy. We 6 ..... (play) outside in the rain and got completely wet. 🌧️



## first and second conditionals

- 9 Choose the correct word(s) to complete the sentences.
- If I **am not** / **wasn't** so busy, I'd come with you.
  - I'll tell Andy you're looking for him if I **see** / **saw** him.
  - If I **know** / **knew** the new receptionist's name, I **will** / **would** introduce you, but I can't remember it!
  - Will** / **Would** you help me look for my glasses when you **get** / **got** home? I can't find them.
  - I **won't** / **wouldn't** do that if I **am** / **were** you! You'll get hurt!

## reflexive pronouns

- 10 Complete the quotes with a reflexive pronoun.
- 'If you travel by 1 ....., you can do what you want, when you want.'
- 'We plan trips 2 ..... so we can create our own timetable.'
- 'My brother drives 3 ..... around on holiday, but I prefer someone to drive me!'
- 'If everyone gave 4 ..... time to relax at the start of their holiday, they'd have more energy to do things later on. I do that 5 .....'

## can, could, be able to

- 11 Choose the correct word(s) to complete the sentences. Sometimes both options are possible.
- I **couldn't** / **wasn't able to** walk until I was two.
  - I **could** / **was able to** pass all my exams at school.
  - We **can't** / **couldn't** drive. Our car has a flat tyre.
  - Could** / **Were you able to** speak English as a child?
  - Ed **can** / **is able to** play any popular song on the guitar. Just ask him!
  - I **could finally** / **was finally able to** finish that game yesterday, but it was hard.

- 12 For each question, write the correct answer. Write one word for each gap.

## How to learn a skill

Learning a skill takes time and effort, but

1 ..... you follow these steps, you can succeed. I  
2 ..... followed them several times and I can now play the piano, swim and type really fast.

First, decide on your goal. What do you want  
3 ..... achieve? Then, think about how to get to that point. You could take a course, take private lessons, or ask someone you know to teach you. While I 4 ..... learning to play the guitar, I did all of these things.

Next, come up with 5 ..... list of possible things that might stop you, for example, a lack of time. Think of ways you can avoid these problems.

Finally, practise, practise, practise. A skill isn't just about knowledge, it's about being 6 ..... to do something.



## VOCABULARY

## jobs; work

- 1 Complete the blog post with the words and phrases in the box.

career chef journalist out of work part-time  
plumber professions qualifications  
responsible runs volunteer wage

## A family of all kinds!

People in my family have lots of different <sup>1</sup> .....  
I'm a <sup>2</sup> ..... gardener – I work three days  
a week. My wife's a financial consultant and my  
brother's a mechanic. He <sup>3</sup> ..... his own  
business, so he's always really busy. Then there's  
my sister. She's a <sup>4</sup> ..... at a local newspaper  
where she's <sup>5</sup> ..... for the sports news. One of  
my cousins was a gardener like me, but he had a  
change of <sup>6</sup> ..... three years ago and is now a  
<sup>7</sup> ..... at a popular local restaurant. My other  
cousin was a shop assistant, but she's <sup>8</sup> ..... at  
the moment. She's a <sup>9</sup> ..... at a children's  
hospital, working for free in her spare time. She's also  
studying to become a <sup>10</sup> ..... so she can install  
bathrooms. When she gets her college <sup>11</sup> .....  
she'll find a job and earn a real <sup>12</sup> ..... again!  
I think it's great that we all do different things. It  
gives us lots to talk about.

## story words; types of film

- 2 Choose the correct words to complete the quiz.

## Guess the film!

- In this <sup>1</sup>**animation / documentary** of a fairytale, Belle ends up in a castle with an ugly prince. As always, the story has a happy <sup>2</sup>**ending / performance**.
- This <sup>3</sup>**biopic / romantic** comedy tells the frightening true story of a pilot who landed a plane on a river in New York. This real-life <sup>4</sup>**hero / storyteller** saved all the passengers.
- This funny <sup>5</sup>**comedy / adventure** is about a group of women who are preparing for their friend's wedding. Its silly <sup>6</sup>**plot / TV show** makes even the most serious person laugh.
- In this <sup>7</sup>**action / documentary** film, the two main <sup>8</sup>**characters / performances** are police officers who try to solve crimes by 'people' from other planets. The police officers wear dark suits.

Answers: 1 *Beauty and the Beast*, 2 *Sully*, 3 *Bridesmaids*, 4 *Men in Black*

collocations with *get* and *make*

- 3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of *get* or *make*.
- I ..... held up at work. My meeting ended late.
  - I thought we'd come by car, but my friend ..... other plans. She booked a taxi for us.
  - Please don't ..... a mess in the kitchen!
  - I didn't use the map and I ..... lost.
  - I had to ..... an urgent call to my dentist.
  - I ..... a mistake with the time. I thought the lesson started at 12.30, not 12.

## decisions

- 4 Choose the correct words to complete the conversation.
- A: What pizza do you want?  
B: I don't know. It's hard to <sup>1</sup>**choose / select**.  
A: Come on, make up your <sup>2</sup>**choice / mind**. I'm hungry!  
B: Don't hurry me. I have to <sup>3</sup>**focus / select** the perfect one.  
A: You do this every time. You take ages to make a <sup>4</sup>**decide / decision**. Then you order the same thing.  
B: I have to <sup>5</sup>**consider / select** all the <sup>6</sup>**choices / decisions** before I can be sure that's what I want. And it makes no <sup>7</sup>**disadvantage / sense** to talk to me right now – I can't focus <sup>8</sup>**in / on** what I'm doing.

## success

- 5 Complete the text with the words in the box.

competitive failure give up hard  
talented strict well

I dreamt of being an astronaut for many years. I worked <sup>1</sup> ..... , was <sup>2</sup> ..... with myself and did very <sup>3</sup> ..... in my engineering course at university. But, even though I am now a successful, <sup>4</sup> ..... pilot, I don't feel like it's enough. I'm very <sup>5</sup> ..... – both with myself and with other people. I always want to do better and improve.

But, unfortunately, I had to <sup>6</sup> ..... my dream of being an astronaut a long time ago. I don't think I did anything wrong, or that I'm a <sup>7</sup> ..... It's just that not all our dreams can come true!

## sports and games

- 6 Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

board fans match rules team video

- I'm playing a really difficult ..... game.
- We've been ..... of the team for years.
- I've never been to a football ..... before.
- I don't understand the ..... of rugby very well.
- Volleyball is my favourite ..... sport.
- Let's play a ..... game with the whole family this evening.



## events and occasions

- 7** Choose the correct words to complete the conversation.

A: I've got some news! I'm <sup>1</sup>**leaving** / **moving** house.  
I've found a place for less money.

B: That's good news after you <sup>2</sup>**failed** / **succeeded** your driving test last week. I've got some good news, too. You know how my cousin and I <sup>3</sup>**had** / **made** an argument? Well, we're friends again now. He <sup>4</sup>**finished** / **graduated** from university last week and he's <sup>5</sup>**got** / **had** a new job which starts next week.

## the arts

- 8** Complete the biography with the words in the box. There are three extra words.

composer drawings images photographer  
shows styles subjects venue works

Vivian Maier was a woman who spent her life caring for others, but was also a talented <sup>1</sup>..... who spent her free time with a camera. Her <sup>2</sup>..... were mostly buildings and people in US cities. After her death in 2007, her <sup>3</sup>..... of art were found and shared online and Maier became famous. She left over 100,000 <sup>4</sup>..... in total. Her work has appeared in <sup>5</sup>..... at studios, galleries and other types of <sup>6</sup>..... around the world.

## creativity: word building

- 9** Complete the words.

- You have to be imagin..... to be an architect.
- It can be hard for art..... to make money.
- My son's a skil..... footballer.
- I sometimes surprise people by coming up with creat..... ideas at work!
- My hobby is photo.....
- Not everyone is artist....., but most of us can enjoy art.

## video collocations

- 10** Complete the conversation with the words in the box.

clips commented edit liked make  
podcast share

A: It's strange. I posted my video an hour ago, but nobody's <sup>1</sup>..... or <sup>2</sup>..... on it yet.

B: Are you sure it's not private? You have to <sup>3</sup>..... it before people can see it.

A: Oh, yeah. I'll check.

B: What's the video of?

A: It's a video <sup>4</sup>..... to teach people to draw.

B: How long did it take you to <sup>5</sup>..... the vlog?

A: Hours! I had to decide which video <sup>6</sup>..... to include and then <sup>7</sup>..... them together.

## technical problems

- 11** Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in the box.

attach crash cut forget work

- I called Peter earlier, but we didn't speak for long. We were ..... off.
- Unfortunately, my laptop has ..... again.
- I've ..... the password.
- Thanks for your email. You forgot to ..... my document, though.
- None of the lifts in the building are .....

## How to ...

- 12A** Put the words in the correct order to make sentences and questions.

- more interesting / sport / For me, / are / artistic activities / than .
- noise / The fridge / making / a strange / keeps .
- is / where / tell me / where / Could you / the post office ?
- here / sitting / anyone / Is ?
- have to / as hard as / the ball / You / hit / you can .
- that / my fault / late / we were / was / It .

- B** Match the sentences (1-6) in Ex 12A with their purposes (a-f).

- taking responsibility for something
- describing a problem
- making a polite inquiry
- giving an opinion
- describing a rule
- starting a conversation

- 13** For each question, choose the correct answer.

Imagine that you're on a city <sup>1</sup>..... with some friends. They want to go sightseeing along the small, <sup>2</sup>..... streets of the old town in the morning and <sup>3</sup>..... the countryside outside of the city after lunch. You want to go, of course, but your favourite football team is also playing a really important <sup>4</sup>..... in the afternoon. What do you do? Well, when it happened to me, I watched the game on my phone, but told my friends that I was making some video <sup>5</sup>..... of the views around me. No one noticed, but unfortunately, my phone ran out of <sup>6</sup>..... five minutes before end of the match!

- A** destination **B** custom **C** break **D** life
- A** narrow **B** wide **C** modern **D** impossible
- A** expect **B** realise **C** accept **D** explore
- A** match **B** referee **C** rule **D** pitch
- A** PINs **B** clips **C** sockets **D** attachments
- A** charge **B** order **C** screens **D** cables

## LEAD-IN

### Audio L.01

- 1 seven, eight
- 2 zero, one
- 3 three, four
- 4 eight, nine
- 5 one, two
- 6 four, five
- 7 six, seven
- 8 five, six

### Audio L.02

- 1  
Teacher: The activity is on page four.  
Antoni: Can you repeat that, please?  
Teacher: Yes. It's on page four.  
Antoni: I don't understand.  
Teacher: Page four in the book. One, two, three, four ...  
Antoni: Ah, yes! I understand.
- 2  
Marta: Edu, what's *libro* in English?  
Edu: I don't know.  
Marta: Simon, what's *libro* in English?  
Simon: It's 'book'.  
Marta: Ah, thank you!

## UNIT 1

### Audio 1.01

- 1 A: Good afternoon. I'm Ben.  
B: Hello Ben. I'm Edward.
- 2 A: Bye Sally!  
B: See you!
- 3 A: Hi, I'm Adam.  
B: Hey, Adam. I'm Jodie. Nice to meet you.
- 4 A: Good night Yasmin!  
B: Bye Laura!

### Audio 1.02

- A: Hello, I'm Mina. Nice to meet you.  
B: Hi Mina. I'm Andressa. Nice to meet you, too. Where are you from?  
A: I'm from Yokohama in Japan. Are you Portuguese?  
B: No, I'm not. I'm Brazilian.  
A: Wow! Are you from Rio de Janeiro?  
B: Yes, I am.

### Audio 1.03

- 1 A: Hello, I'm Laura. Nice to meet you!  
B: Hi! I'm Henri. Nice to meet you, too!
- 2 A: Good afternoon. I'm Antonio.  
B: Hello. I'm Ali.
- 3 A: Good afternoon. I'm Julia.  
B: Hello. I'm Joseph.
- 4 A: Hi, I'm Suzie.  
B: Hey Suzie! I'm Ben!

### Audio 1.04

- H: Hello. I'm Hugo.  
E: Hi Hugo. I'm Emi. Nice to meet you.  
H: Nice to meet you, too. Are you a student here?  
E: Yes, I am. Are you a student, too?  
H: Yes, I am. I'm French.  
E: Ah, you're from France! Are you from Paris?  
H: No, I'm not. I'm from Marseilles. Where are you from, Emi?  
E: I'm from Osaka in Japan.  
J: Hello everyone! I'm Jess. I'm a teacher here at London Central University. I'm British, but I'm not from London. I'm from Cardiff. It's nice to meet you all.

### Audio 1.05

- |                                  |                                    |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1 a <u>business</u> woman        | 6 an <u>office</u> <u>worker</u>   |
| 2 an <u>actor</u>                | 7 a <u>nurse</u>                   |
| 3 a <u>police</u> <u>officer</u> | 8 a <u>shop</u> <u>assistant</u>   |
| 4 a <u>singer</u>                | 9 a <u>digital</u> <u>designer</u> |
| 5 a <u>taxi</u> <u>driver</u>    | 10 a <u>football</u> <u>player</u> |

### Audio 1.06

- |           |           |
|-----------|-----------|
| 1 H K S A | 4 B G R T |
| 2 N Z U F | 5 Y V P C |
| 3 W O U Q | 6 L F Z E |

### Audio 1.07

- |                     |                 |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| 1 D-O-C-T-O-R       | 5 T-E-A-C-H-E-R |
| 2 P-A-R-K           | 6 P-H-O-T-O     |
| 3 A-R-G-E-N-T-I-N-A | 7 A-R-T-I-S-T   |
| 4 B-O-O-K           | 8 V-I-E-T-N-A-M |

### Audio 1.08

- Receptionist: Hello. Can I help you?  
Isabel: Hello. I'm a new student here.  
Receptionist: OK. What's your name?  
Isabel: It's Isabel Fernandez.  
Receptionist: Isabel Hernandez?  
Isabel: No, Fernandez.  
Receptionist: Oh, sorry. How do you spell that?  
Isabel: F-E-R-N-A-N-D-E-Z.  
Receptionist: F-E-R-N-A-N-D-E-Z?  
Isabel: Yes, that's right.  
Receptionist: And your first name ... I-S-A-B-E-L-L?  
Isabel: No, that's not right. It's I-S-A-B-E-L.  
Receptionist: OK, perfect. And what's your nationality Isabel?  
Isabel: I'm Spanish.  
Receptionist: OK. And what's your home address?  
Isabel: It's 5 Lennox Street, Bristol.  
Receptionist: How do you spell the street name?  
Isabel: L-E-N-N-O-X.  
Receptionist: Great, thank you. And what's your phone number?  
Isabel: It's 713 9205.  
Receptionist: Sorry, can you repeat that please?  
Isabel: 713 9205.  
Receptionist: Thank you. OK Isabel, here's your student card.  
Isabel: Thank you very much.

### Audio 1.09

- Receptionist: Hello. Can I help you?  
Maika: Hello. I'm a new student here.  
Receptionist: OK. What's your surname?  
Maika: It's Tanaka.  
Receptionist: How do you spell your surname?



Maika: T-A-N-A-K-A.  
 Receptionist: T-A-N-A-K-A?  
 Maika: Yes, that's right.  
 Receptionist: And what's your first name?  
 Maika: It's Maika.  
 Receptionist: Is that ... M-A-E-K-A?  
 Maika: No, that's not right. It's M-A-I-K-A.  
 Receptionist: OK, perfect. And what's your address  
 Maika?  
 Maika: It's 2 Park Street.  
 Receptionist: How do you spell the street name?  
 Maika: P-A-R-K.  
 Receptionist: Great, thank you. And what's your phone  
 number?  
 Maika: It's 629 3301.  
 Receptionist: Sorry, can you repeat that please?  
 Maika: 629 3301.  
 Receptionist: Thank you. OK Maika, here's your student  
 card.  
 Maika: Thank you very much.

### Audio 1.10 and 1.11

Receptionist: Hello, can I help you?  
 Elizabeth: Yes. I'm here for the conference.  
 Receptionist: Just a moment. What's your name?  
 Elizabeth: It's Elizabeth Browne.  
 Receptionist: How do you spell your surname?  
 Elizabeth: It's B-R-O-W-N-E.  
 Receptionist: Thank you. And your first name ...  
 E-L-I-S-A-B-E-T-H?  
 Elizabeth: No, that's wrong. It's E-L-I-Z-A-B-E-T-H.  
 Receptionist: Sorry, E-L-I-Z-A-B-E-T-H?  
 Elizabeth: Yes, that's right.  
 Receptionist: Perfect. Here's your name card. The  
 conference is in room seven.  
 Elizabeth: Thank you.  
 Receptionist: No problem.

### Audio 1.12

Presenter: Hello and welcome to the 'My Top Three  
 Things' podcast. With me today are Ralph and  
 Yolanda. Ralph, tell us about yourself.  
 Ralph: Hi, I'm Ralph. I'm from Sheffield in the UK, but  
 now I'm in London. I'm a police officer.  
 Presenter: Thanks, Ralph. Yolanda, what about you?  
 Yolanda: Hi, I'm Yolanda and I'm from Manaus in Brazil,  
 but now I'm in Washington, in the USA. I'm a  
 digital designer in an American company.  
 Presenter: Thanks, Yolanda. OK, Ralph, what are your top  
 three things?  
 Ralph: It's difficult, but number three is my laptop.  
 Number two is my wallet. It has money, two  
 credit cards and photos of my family in it.  
 Number one is my mobile phone – I always  
 have my phone!  
 Presenter: Great, thanks Ralph. Yolanda, tell us about  
 your top three things.  
 Yolanda: OK. Number three is a notebook – I always  
 have a notebook in my bag. Number two is my  
 mobile phone – or mobile phones – I have two.  
 But number one ... is my bag! It's from Italy  
 and it's beautiful.  
 Presenter: Nice! Thanks, Yolanda. Now ...

## UNIT 2

### Audio 2.01

- 1 twelve
- 2 seventy-three
- 3 eighty-nine
- 4 nineteen
- 5 thirty
- 6 ninety-nine
- 7 thirteen
- 8 twenty-two
- 9 forty-six
- 10 sixty

### Audio 2.02

- 1 thirteen
- 2 eighty
- 3 twenty
- 4 sixteen
- 5 sixty
- 6 eighteen
- 7 fifteen
- 8 forty

### Audio 2.03

A: Who are they?  
 B: They're my friends, Jaime and Beatriz.  
 A: Where are they from?  
 B: They're from Mexico.  
 A: Are they from Mexico City?  
 B: No, they're not. They're from Mérida.  
 A: Are they students?  
 B: Yes, they are.

### Audio 2.04

A: Who are they?  
 B: They're my parents, Maria and Richard.  
 A: Where are they?  
 B: They're at our house in France. My mother is Colombian.  
 She's from Cali.  
 A: Is your father Colombian, too?  
 B: No, he's American. He's from Los Angeles.  
 A: And who are they?  
 B: That's my sister Helen and her husband Kerem. He's  
 Turkish.  
 A: Are they in Turkey now?  
 B: Yes. They're in Izmir. Their children are Isabel and Zeki.  
 They're five and three.

### Audio 2.05

- 1 sister
- 2 brother
- 3 husband
- 4 parents
- 5 children
- 6 people
- 7 women
- 8 daughter

## Audio 2.06

Matt: Hi Gemma, how are you?  
 Gemma: Oh, hi Matt. I'm fine thanks, you?  
 Matt: Yeah, I'm OK ... oh look!  
 Gemma: Let's see ... ah, what a great photo! Is that your family?  
 Matt: Yeah, it's my wife Giulia and our daughters. It's from the weekend.  
 Gemma: It's lovely. Where are they?  
 Matt: They're in our garden.  
 Gemma: It's beautiful!  
 Matt: Thanks. Olivia is 19 and Sofia is 21. I have a son too, but he isn't in the photo. His name's Leo.  
 Gemma: How old is he?  
 Matt: He's erm ... 25!  
 Gemma: What do they do?  
 Matt: The girls are students. Sofia is in Toronto and Olivia is Montreal, but they're here in Vancouver now.  
 Gemma: And what about Leo? Is he a student, too?  
 Matt: No, he's an English teacher. He's in Italy now.  
 Gemma: Oh wow! Your wife's from Italy, isn't she?  
 Matt: Yes, she is. She's from Rome. And she's a teacher, too! How about your family? How old are your children now?

## Audio 2.07

**1**  
 Dave: Hi John, how are you?  
 John: Hi, Dave. Not bad, thanks. How are you?  
 Dave: I'm really good, thanks.  
**2**  
 Sara: Hey Beth, how are you?  
 Beth: I'm fine, thanks. How are you, Sara?  
 Sara: I'm not very well.  
**3**  
 Iulia: Hello Chris, how are you?  
 Chris: Hi Iulia. I'm very well. How are you?  
 Iulia: I'm great!  
**4**  
 Eliana: Hey Andrea, how are you?  
 Andrea: I'm OK, thanks. You?  
 Eliana: I'm not very good.  
**5**  
 Richard: Hi Emil!  
 Emil: Hi Richard, how are you?  
 Richard: I'm well, thanks, Emil. How are you?  
 Emil: Good, thanks.

## Audio 2.08

Joe: Hi Kate. How are you?  
 Kate: Not bad, thanks, Joe. Coffee?  
 Joe: Oh yes, please. White please, erm, one sugar. Great. Thanks Kate.  
 Kate: You're welcome. How are things?  
 Joe: Good, thanks. How's work?  
 Kate: Not very good. I'm really tired today. How's your new job?  
 Joe: It's great! The people in the office are really friendly.  
 Kate: Good. And how are your family?  
 Joe: They're really good, thanks. How's your son?  
 Kate: He's great, thanks. His new school is really good, and the teachers are great. He's really happy there.  
 Joe: That's good. Oh, look at the time! Thanks for the coffee!  
 Kate: No problem. See you later!  
 Joe: See you!

## Audio 2.09

**1** How is your new car?  
**2** I'm very happy with it.  
**3** Not bad, but I'm very tired.  
**4** My father isn't very well.

## Audio 2.10

**1** How are your children?  
**2** It's a beautiful day.  
**3** No problem.  
**4** Thanks for the chat.  
**5** How's your new job?  
**6** See you later.

## Audio 2.11 and 2.12

A: Hi Sarah! Good to see you!  
 B: Hello, how are things?  
 A: Not bad, thanks. How are you?  
 B: I'm really good. How's your new apartment?  
 A: It's great! We're really happy with it.  
 B: Good. Oh, look at the time! Thanks for the chat!  
 A: See you later.  
 B: Bye.

## UNIT 3

### Audio 3.01

<b>1</b> My sister's car.	<b>5</b> My daughter's bike.
<b>2</b> Ilya's guitar.	<b>6</b> Eloise's ring.
<b>3</b> Beth's camera.	<b>7</b> Griff's apartment.
<b>4</b> Max's watch.	<b>8</b> Adesh's bed.

### Audio 3.02

My desk is small, but I have lots of things on it. I have a computer, a keyboard, and a mouse. I have two notebooks and a cup with pens in it. I don't any have pencils. I have some headphones, a bottle of water and a photo of my children. What else? Well, I have my phone and a book.

### Audio 3.03

**1** A: Do you have any scissors?  
 B: No, I don't.  
**2** A: Do you have a bottle of water?  
 B: Yes, I do.  
**3** A: Do they have a car?  
 B: Yes, they do.  
**4** A: Do we have any pencils?  
 B: No, we don't.

### Audio 3.04

Jamie: Hello and welcome to *Inside New York*. I'm Jamie and today I'm in Times Square to ask people about what they have in their bags. Hi! I'm Jamie. I have a podcast for young people in New York. Can I ask you some questions?  
 Luca: Erm, OK.  
 Mia: Yeah, sure.  
 Jamie: Great! What's your name?  
 Luca: It's Luca.  
 Jamie: Do you have a job?  
 Karim: No, I don't. I'm a student.  
 Jamie: OK. So, what's in your bag today?  
 Luca: Erm ... I have my phone, some headphones, a bottle of water, a book, ... and my glasses.  
 Jamie: Do you have a notebook?



Luca: No, I don't ... and I don't have any pens or pencils, but I have a tablet. My tablet's new.  
 Jamie: OK, great! And, what's your name?  
 Mia: I'm Mia.  
 Jamie: Do you have a job, Mia?  
 Mia: Yes, I do. I'm a writer. I have a blog.  
 Jamie: Wow! That's great! And, what's in your bag?  
 Mia: Oh, lots of things! It's my work bag and it's very big! Let's see, erm ... I have my phone, of course, my tablet, two notebooks – a red one and a blue one, some pencils and a pen. The pen's green. It's my favourite colour. I also have some sticky notes in different colours and a bottle of water.  
 Jamie: Wow! Lots of things! Thanks very much, Mia.

## Audio 3.05

Maja: Hey Enzo, look at these jeans.  
 Enzo: The light blue or black?  
 Maja: The light blue ... I have black jeans and dark blue jeans.  
 Enzo: They're nice. How much are they?  
 Maj: I don't know. Excuse me!  
 Shop assistant: Hello. Can I help you?  
 Maja: Yes, please. How much are the jeans?  
 Shop assistant: They're £50.  
 Maja: OK. And how much is this yellow top?  
 Shop assistant: It's £30.  
 Maja: Can I try them on?  
 Shop assistant: Yes, of course.  
 Maja: Excuse me. Where are the changing rooms?  
 Shop assistant: Over there.  
 Maja: Thanks  
 Maja: What do you think?  
 Enzo: I like your jeans.  
 Maja: Yeah, the jeans are perfect, but the top is small. Excuse me!  
 Shop assistant: Yes?  
 Maja: Do you have this in a size 12?  
 Shop assistant: No, I don't, sorry. But I have green or purple tops in a size 12.  
 Maja: Hmm. No thanks. I don't like purple or green. Do you like anything Enzo?  
 Enzo: Yes, I like this jacket. Excuse me. How much is this jacket?  
 Shop assistant: It's £75. We have different colours.  
 Enzo: Do you have red?  
 Shop assistant: Yes, I do. What size are you?  
 Enzo: Large ... thanks. Can I try it on?  
 Shop assistant: Yes, of course.  
 Maja: The jacket is great Enzo! Red's a good colour for you.  
 Enzo: Yeah, I love it!

## Audio 3.06

- 1 How much is this jumper?
- 2 Can I try these shoes on?
- 3 The changing rooms are over there.
- 4 Do you have a large size?

## Audio 3.07

- 1 Excuse me.
- 2 How much are the trousers?
- 3 Where are the changing rooms?
- 4 What size are you?
- 5 They're \$25.
- 6 Can I try it on?

## Audio 3.08 and 3.09

A: Excuse me.  
 B: Yes? Can I help you?  
 A: I like this jumper. How much is it?  
 B: It's £25.  
 A: Thank you. Can I try it on?  
 B: Yes, of course. What size are you?  
 A: I'm a medium.  
 B: Here you are.  
 A: Great. Where are the changing rooms?  
 B: They're over there.  
 A: Thank you.

## Audio 3.10

- 1 A: Do you like pizza?  
 B: I love pizza! It's my favourite food. What about you?  
 A: I hate pizza. I never eat it. I really like steak. Do you like steak?  
 B: No, I don't.
- 2 A: Hi Carl, do you like my new jumper?  
 B: Yes, I do. I think it's beautiful. Is it new?  
 A: Yes, it's from the new clothes shop in town. I really like the colour.

## Audio 3.11

Presenter: Hello and welcome to the *City Life* podcast. Today is all about shops and I have Eliza, Yuki and Toto with me. Eliza, what's your favourite shop?  
 Eliza: Bookshops. I love books and I don't buy them online. I have a big bookshop near my house in Gdansk. It's great – the shop assistants are really friendly, and they have hundreds of interesting books ... and a really good café. I think it's my favourite place.  
 Presenter: Nice! Toto, do you like bookshops?  
 Toto: No, I don't. I don't really like books. I like video games. My favourite shop is a computer shop in my town. It's great – it has computers, games, tablets, phones ... I buy lots of different things there.  
 Presenter: Thanks Toto! Yuki, what about you?  
 Yuki: My favourite shops are clothes shops. I love beautiful, old clothes. My city has lots of clothes shops, but my favourite is a small shop called *Market*. This jacket is from there.  
 Presenter: It's cool! I love the dark green colour. So, what shops do you not like? Eliza?  
 Eliza: Umm ... I don't like meat, so I hate butchers' shops. And I don't really like clothes shops.  
 Presenter: OK. Toto, what about you?  
 Toto: I don't like bookshops or clothes shops, and I hate shoe shops!  
 Presenter: Yuki, what about you?  
 Yuki: I love shoe shops! Erm, I don't really like supermarkets or sports shops, but I don't hate any shops.  
 Presenter: Thanks. Now, Eliza, what do you buy online ...

## UNIT 4

### Audio 4.01

For breakfast, I usually have rice with eggs and vegetables, often carrots and mushrooms. Sometimes I have a cheese sandwich from a café. I don't often eat fruit for breakfast, but sometimes I eat an apple or a banana. I drink water and I always have a cup of coffee.

### Audio 4.02

apple  
banana  
beef  
bread  
cheese  
chicken  
mushroom  
orange  
pasta  
potato  
sandwich  
tomato

### Audio 4.03

Interviewer: Welcome to *Food and Friends*. Today, we're with Adriana Carvalho, a surfer from Brazil to ask: What do you usually eat? Nice to meet you, Adriana. So, you're a professional surfer ...?

Adriana: Yes, that's right. Surfing is my job.

Interviewer: And where are you from?

Adriana: I'm from Bahia, in Brazil.

Interviewer: Is that by the sea?

Adriana: Yes. I love the sea. It's my favourite thing!

Interviewer: So, do you eat a lot of fish?

Adriana: Umm, yes, I do ... but I eat lots of other things, too.

Interviewer: OK. What do you eat in a typical day?

Adriana: For breakfast I usually have cereal with milk, and I always have some fruit ... usually a banana and an apple or orange. On Saturdays, I always have Brazilian cheese bread. It's one of my favourite foods. I always have one or two big cups of coffee in the morning, but I never have tea. I don't like tea.

Interviewer: And what about lunch?

Adriana: Sometimes I have a sandwich, but I usually have pasta with cheese and some vegetables, often tomatoes or mushrooms. I usually drink water, but sometimes I have fruit juice. I really like apple juice.

Interviewer: And what do you have for dinner?

Adriana: I always have dinner at home with my family. We have rice or potatoes with vegetables and fish or meat. Usually we have chicken, but I love steak, too! But, my favourite food is Moqueca ... it's Brazilian fish and tomatoes.

Interviewer: Mmm. Sounds great! Thanks Adriana ...

### Audio 4.04

I get up at 7 every day. I usually have cereal and fruit for breakfast and a cup of coffee. I leave home at 8.30 and go to work. I start work at 9 a.m. I finish work at 5.30. I get home at 6 p.m. and make dinner for my family. After dinner we often watch TV. I go to bed at 11 p.m.

### Audio 4.05

- |           |            |
|-----------|------------|
| 1 goes    | 6 eats     |
| 2 leaves  | 7 has      |
| 3 makes   | 8 gets     |
| 4 watches | 9 finishes |
| 5 does    | 10 studies |

### Audio 4.06

Barista: Can I help you?

Customer: Yes, can we have two cheese and tomato sandwiches, please?

Barista: White or brown bread?

Customer: Brown, please.

Barista: Anything else?

Customer: Yes. Can we have two coffees – an espresso and an Americano, please?

Barista: Anything else?

Customer: How much are the pastries?

Barista: Let me check ... they're £2.20.

Customer: Can we have two, please?

Barista: Here you go.

Customer: Thanks. And can I have a mineral water please?

Barista: Still or sparkling?

Customer: Sparkling, please.

Barista: Anything else?

Customer: Umm. No, thanks. How much is that?

Barista: It's £19.50.

Customer: Here you go. Thanks.

Barista: Thank you.

Customer: Oh, can I have some sugar, please?

Barista: It's over there – with the knives and forks.

Customer: Great. Bye.

### Audio 4.07

- 1 Tea or coffee?
- 2 Still or sparkling?
- 3 Espresso or latte?
- 4 Brown or white?
- 5 Apple or orange?
- 6 Small or large?

### Audio 4.08

- 1 Tea or coffee?
- 2 Still or sparkling?
- 3 Brown or white?

### Audio 4.09 and 4.10

A: Can I help you?

B: Yes, what are the breakfast specials?

A: We have pastries or sandwiches with tea or coffee.

B: Thank you. Can I have a pastry, please?

A: Fruit or chocolate?

B: Fruit, please.

A: Tea or coffee?

B: Coffee please.

A: With milk and sugar?

B: Just milk, thank you.

A: Anything else?

B: Yes, can I have a mineral water, please?

A: Still or sparkling?

B: Still, please. How much is that?

A: Just a moment. Let me check. That's £8.

B: Thanks.



## UNIT 5

### Audio 5.01

- 1 I really like him.
- 2 She never helps us.
- 3 Please call her tomorrow.
- 4 They don't like it.
- 5 He always thanks us.
- 6 She usually gets him coffee.

### Audio 5.02

- 1 Can Joshua play tennis?
- 2 Ana can type very well.
- 3 Danny can't remember people's names.
- 4 Yes, I can.
- 5 Can you cook Italian food?
- 6 Sylvie can speak three languages.

### Audio 5.03

Martin: Hey Pete, what's that?  
 Pete: It's a quiz. Look ...  
 Martin: What can you do? What do your skills say about you? ... Cool. Let's do it!  
 Pete: OK, you first, Martin.  
 Martin: Sure.  
 Pete: Question 1 ... can you play the piano or the guitar?  
 Martin: I can play the piano, but I can't play the guitar.  
 Pete: OK. Can you dance salsa?  
 Martin: No, I can't. But I can dance the tango.  
 Pete: Can you?! Wow. OK, next question ... can you sing a song in English?  
 Martin: Yes, I can. I love American music.  
 Pete: OK, erm, can you paint?  
 Martin: Paint a picture? No, I can't.  
 Pete: The next question is: can you read a map?  
 Martin: Yes, I can. That's easy!  
 Pete: And can you remember important dates?  
 Martin: Hmm. No, I can't. I always forget birthdays.  
 Pete: Can you say 'hello' in five languages?  
 Martin: Yes, I can. I can say 'hello' in German, Polish, English, Japanese and Russian.  
 Pete: Wow! I can't do that! Can you use a computer?  
 Martin: Yes, of course! I use one every day for work.  
 Pete: And can you type with your eyes closed?  
 Martin: Yes, I can but not very well!  
 Pete: Can you run or swim five kilometres?  
 Martin: I can run five kilometres, but I can't swim.  
 Pete: OK, last question. Can you play football?  
 Martin: Yes, I can, but I'm not very good.  
 Pete: OK. No more questions. So, let's see ... what does it say about your personality?

### Audio 5.04

Emily: Hello?  
 Dave: Hey Emily, it's Dave. Are you in the café now?  
 Emily: Yes, I am. It's busy! Where are you?  
 Dave: I'm at my desk. I can't take a lunch break today.  
 Emily: Can I get you something?  
 Dave: Yes please! Could you get me a coffee?  
 Emily: Sure. An Americano?  
 Dave: A latte, please. A big one!  
 Emily: No problem. Anything else?  
 Dave: Umm ... yes. Do they have any pasta?  
 Emily: Erm ... no, not today. They have sandwiches – cheese, egg or chicken.

Dave: OK. Could I have a chicken sandwich, please?  
 Emily: Sure. A latte and a chicken sandwich.  
 Dave: Thanks ... oh, Emily!  
 Emily: Yes?  
 Dave: Could you ask for brown bread please?  
 Emily: No problem. Anything else, Dave?  
 Dave: Erm, no thanks.  
 Emily: OK. See you soon.  
 Dave: Thanks, Emily.

### Audio 5.05

- 1 Could you drive me home, please?
- 2 Can I get you a coffee?
- 3 I'm sorry, I can't at the moment.
- 4 Could you do it for me?

### Audio 5.06

- 1 Could you help me?
- 2 Could you make me a coffee?
- 3 Could you send me an email?
- 4 Could you drive me home?
- 5 Could you type the report?
- 6 Could you get some milk?

### Audio 5.07 and 5.08

A: Hi Jo, are you OK?  
 B: No. Could you help me?  
 A: Of course. What's the problem?  
 B: I can't open this report.  
 A: Can I look? Oh, OK. Do you have the password?  
 B: No, I don't. Sorry. Could you open it for me?  
 A: All right. Give me two minutes.  
 B: Thank you so much!  
 A: No problem!

### Audio 5.09

Theo: Sam, what's the date today?  
 Sam: It's the 9th of January, Theo. It's my birthday!  
 Theo: Is it?! Happy birthday!  
 Sam: Thank you! It's just a normal day for me. I don't usually do anything different or special.  
 Theo: Really, why not?  
 Sam: I don't know. I don't really like birthdays, and my friends don't usually remember the date.  
 Theo: What?!!  
 Sam: Well, sometimes they remember. Sometimes I have a birthday picnic in the park with them. I really like picnics.  
 Theo: Oh. I really love my birthday! It's my favourite day of the year!  
 Sam: Ha. When's your birthday?  
 Theo: It's in June. June the seventeenth.  
 Sam: What do you usually do?  
 Theo: I always have lunch with my family at my parents' home. My mum always makes my favourite food, and my dad makes me a birthday cake. Then in the evening I meet my friends and go out for a meal in a restaurant. Sometimes I have a party in my apartment if my birthday is at the weekend.  
 Sam: Oh wow! You do a lot on your birthday!  
 Theo: You can come this year!

## Audio 5.10

- 1 It's the twenty-fifth of July.
- 2 My birthday is on the first of May.
- 3 Today is the eighteenth of February.
- 4 His birthday is on the third of April.

## UNIT 6

### Audio 6.01

Great one-bedroom apartment in the city centre. £175 per night. Small, beautiful apartment in the city centre. It has a lovely living room with a big sofa, an armchair and a television. The kitchen has a cooker and a fridge. The bedroom has a big bed, a chair and a table with a beautiful lamp on it. It doesn't have a garden, but it is near a great park.

### Audio 6.02

- A: Where do you live?  
 B: I live in Geneva, next to the lake.  
 A: Do you live in an apartment or a house?  
 B: An apartment. It's on the 12th floor.  
 A: Is it near your office?  
 B: Yes, it's only ten minutes by bike. I live with two of my colleagues. Look, you can see them in this photo. That's Eun and that's Ed.  
 A: Is that your cat on the floor in front of Ed?  
 B: Yes, that's Mochi. He usually sleeps under my bed and we can't see him!

### Audio 6.03

- 1 It's under the window.
- 2 It's on the shelf.
- 3 It's next to the bath.
- 4 It's in front of you.
- 5 Is it between the chairs?
- 6 Is it near your house?
- 7 Is it behind the bed?
- 8 Is it in the fridge?

### Audio 6.04

- A: Do you like your new apartment?  
 B: Yes, it's great! There's a big kitchen, a living room and there are two bedrooms.  
 A: Is there a garden?  
 B: No, there isn't, but it's next to a park.  
 A: Do you live in the town centre?  
 B: Yes, it's great! There's a cinema, a museum and a library near me. There aren't any sports centres, but there's a swimming pool.  
 A: Is there a train station?  
 B: No, there isn't, but there's a bus station.

### Audio 6.05

- 1 There's a very good café.
- 2 Are there any supermarkets near here?
- 3 There isn't a park in the area.
- 4 There are two museums.
- 5 Is there a Thai restaurant?
- 6 No, there isn't.

### Audio 6.06

- Presenter: Hello and welcome to the 'My home' podcast. Today's question is: What do you need in a city or town? Genevieve, let's start with you – what's important for you in the place that you live?
- Genevieve: Well, I live in a very small place. There isn't much there! I think good schools are important, but there aren't any in my town – my children's school is about twenty minutes away in a different town. Erm, I think shops are important, too. We don't have a shopping centre, but there's a small supermarket and a post office.
- Presenter: How about a sports centre? Is that important for you?
- Genevieve: Not really. We don't have a sports centre, but we have a swimming pool and there's a lovely park. The park is my favourite place in town. I often walk or run there.
- Presenter: Great, thanks. What about your town, Tomas?
- Tomas: Well, I'm also from a small town, but there is a lot there. For example, we have a school and a shopping centre.
- Presenter: And what's important for you in the place that you live?
- Tomas: Well, sport is very important for me, so I'm happy there's a big sports centre and a swimming pool near my house. I think restaurants are important, too. There's a cheap Italian restaurant and an expensive Thai restaurant in my town.
- Presenter: Mmm, I love Thai food! And what about libraries or museums? Are they important for you?
- Tomas: Yeah, I guess they're important, too. We have a library, but we don't have a museum.
- Presenter: OK, thanks. And Liane? What about your town?
- Liane: I don't live in a town, I live in a big city.
- Presenter: And what's important for you where you live?
- Liane: Everything! I love my city because there are lots of places to go – shops, parks, supermarkets, hotels, restaurants ... There are also some libraries, museums, two sports centres and a hospital. My favourite place is the Turkish restaurant near my apartment. Oh, and for travel, there are two train stations and a bus station, but there isn't an airport.
- Presenter: Great! Thanks, everyone.

### Audio 6.07

- Jago: Hey Lily, it's me.  
 Lily: Jago! Where *are* you? You're 30 minutes late!  
 Jago: I know, sorry! I'm at the train station now. Where are you? Are you at the cinema?  
 Lily: Yes, of course! The film starts in 15 minutes.  
 Jago: Oh, OK. How far is the cinema from the train station?  
 Lily: About 10 minutes by bus. Take the number 41 or 42. There's a bus stop opposite the train station entrance.  
 Jago: On North Street?  
 Lily: Yes, it's next to the post office.  
 Jago: OK ... bus number 41 or 42. And where's the cinema?  
 Lily: It's in the shopping centre, on the 2nd floor, next to the pizza restaurant.



Jago: 2nd floor, pizza restaurant – got it!  
 Lily: I'm near the information desk opposite the lift. I have our tickets.  
 Jago: OK, great! See you soon!  
 Lily: See you soon, Jago.

## Audio 6.08

- 1 It's near the supermarket.
- 2 It's next to the sports centre.
- 3 It's to the right of the hospital.
- 4 I'm in front of the train station.
- 5 It's on the left of the library.
- 6 It's opposite the post office.

## Audio 6.9 and 6.10

A: Excuse me?  
 B: Yes?  
 A: Is there a library near here?  
 B: Yes, there is.  
 A: How far is it?  
 B: About ten minutes from here.  
 A: How do I get there?  
 B: Do you know the museum?  
 A: Yes, I do.  
 B: It's opposite the museum, next to the post office.  
 A: Great, thank you.

## UNIT 7

### Audio 7.01

- 1 Where do you live?
- 2 Who do you live with?
- 3 What do you do?
- 4 When do you work?
- 5 How do you do it?
- 6 Why do you like it?

### Audio 7.02

Interviewer: Hello and welcome to 'Health Talk'. Today I'm with blogger and influencer Zorah Z. Hi Zorah, nice to meet you.  
 Zorah: Nice to meet you, too.  
 Interviewer: Now, you're a social media influencer. What does that mean?  
 Zorah: Well, I have a blog about food and health.  
 Interviewer: Great! So, what do you do to stay healthy?  
 Zorah: Well, I run almost every day and I swim two times a week. Um, I also play football and tennis. But I never do exercise on Sundays.  
 Interviewer: Wow! That's a lot of exercise.  
 Zorah: Yeah, exercise is very important to me. It helps me stay healthy ... and happy. I always feel good after exercise.  
 Interviewer: And what about food? Do you always eat healthy food?  
 Zorah: Yeah, I usually eat healthy food. I love it!  
 Interviewer: What do you usually cook?  
 Zorah: I cook lots of vegetables, some fish, chicken ... I cook a lot of Thai and Japanese food. I love fruit, but I also make a great chocolate cake!  
 Interviewer: Nice! So, lots of exercise and healthy food. What else do you do to be healthy?  
 Zorah: I don't have a car, so I always walk or cycle. Um ... and I do little things – for example, I drink green tea or hot water with lemon every morning.

Interviewer: And how do you relax?  
 Zorah: I have a long bath every evening, and every morning I sit in my garden and spend five minutes alone before I take my children to school. What else? Um, I read books, I listen to music and sometimes I paint.  
 Interviewer: What do you paint?  
 Zorah: I usually paint pictures of people, but sometimes I paint the flowers in my garden.  
 Interviewer: What do you do at the weekends?  
 Zorah: I usually go for a long walk or take my children to the park to feed the ducks ... Erm, I visit my friends, and I call my family. I don't go on social media or spend a lot of time online at the weekends.  
 Interviewer: Thanks Zorah. That's really interesting!

### Audio 7.03

- 1 Was it your birthday last week?
- 2 Yes, it was.
- 3 Was the restaurant good?
- 4 Yes, it was. The food was amazing!
- 5 Were you at the cinema last night?
- 6 No, we weren't. We were at work.

### Audio 7.04

1 A: Hello?  
 B: Hi Zoe, how are you?  
 A: Not great.  
 B: Oh no! What's wrong?  
 A: I've got a cold, and a really bad earache.  
 B: Oh, poor you. Are you at work?  
 A: No, I'm not. I'm at home.  
 B: Good. Have a hot drink and go to bed.  
 A: Yes, I want to sleep.  
 B: OK, get well soon.  
 A: Thanks. Bye.  
 B: Bye.  
 2 A: Hi Jo. I'm sorry I'm late.  
 B: Oh, hi. Where *were* you?  
 A: I was with Chen. She's got really bad backache.  
 B: Oh no, poor Chen. Is she at home?  
 A: Yes, she's in bed now. She can't come for dinner with us. Her back really hurts!  
 B: That's not good. I hope she feels better soon.  
 A: Yeah, me too.  
 3 A: Hello.  
 B: Hi Alexis. Are you OK? You weren't in class this morning.  
 A: No, I feel terrible!  
 B: What's the problem?  
 A: I've got stomach ache. It really hurts! And my head hurts, too.  
 B: Poor you.  
 A: Can you tell the teacher this afternoon?  
 B: Of course! Get well soon!  
 A: Great. Thank you ...

### Audio 7.05

- 1 backache
- 2 a cold
- 3 earache
- 4 a headache
- 5 stomach ache
- 6 toothache

## Audio 7.06 and 7.07

A: Hello, Sadie.  
 B: Hi Emil. I'm really sorry but I can't come to work today.  
 A: What's the problem?  
 B: I don't feel well.  
 A: What's wrong?  
 B: I've got a really bad headache and my eyes hurt.  
 A: Poor you.  
 B: I'm sorry about work today.  
 A: It's OK. You stay at home and rest.  
 B: Thank you.  
 A: Get well soon.  
 A: Thanks.

## Audio 7.08

Jesse: Hey Corinne, how are you?  
 Corrine: Hi Jesse. I'm fine, thanks. You?  
 Jesse: Yeah, I'm good. What's that?  
 Corrine: It's an advert for a new sports centre in town. It opens next week.  
 Jesse: Oh, can I see? I want to do more exercise.  
 Corrine: Sure, here you go. Look, there's a gym and a swimming pool. They have classes, too.  
 Jesse: Let's see ... yoga classes! I really want to do yoga.  
 Corrine: I do yoga.  
 Jesse: Really? When do you do it?  
 Corrine: I go to classes once a week, and I practice it every day. Sometimes I do it at home, and sometimes in the park with a friend.  
 Jesse: In the park?! Nice!  
 Corrine: Yes. Outdoor exercise is great!  
 Jesse: Have you got any yoga tips for me?  
 Corrine: Erm ... wear comfortable clothes, remember to breathe and don't eat a big meal before your class!  
 Jesse: Haha! Thanks.  
 Corrine: You can also take a friend to class with you. Exercise is fun with friends! What exercise do you do now?  
 Jesse: Hmm. I don't do a lot of sport or exercise – I only have time at the weekend. I play cricket with my friends on Sundays, and sometimes I go for a run on Saturday morning.  
 Corrine: Who do you run with?  
 Jesse: I always run alone. I listen to my favourite music.  
 Corrine: I'd like to run. Any tips?  
 Jesse: Sure. Always warm up first – walk for five or ten minutes before you run. And wear good shoes.  
 Corrine: OK. Anything else?  
 Jesse: Drink lots of water. Oh, and listen to music you love!  
 Corrine: Thanks, Jesse! ... hey, there are basketball classes at the new sports centre ....

## UNIT 8

### Audio 8.01

- 1 travelled
- 2 walked
- 3 watched
- 4 started
- 5 stopped
- 6 planned
- 7 arrived
- 8 visited
- 9 wanted
- 10 liked

### Audio 8.02

Anders: Hey Sally! How was your weekend?  
 Sally: It was amazing! I was in Paris!  
 Anders: Really?!

Sally: Yeah. It was Luisa's 40th birthday last week, and it is my 40th birthday soon, so we wanted a weekend break to do something special.

Anders: Nice!  
 Sally: We travelled there by train – it was really fast! The train was at 5 p.m. on Friday and we arrived in Paris at 7. We stayed in a hotel in the centre of Paris next to the River Seine.

Anders: Was it expensive?  
 Sally: Well, we booked a different hotel online, but when we arrived it was full, so we didn't stay there.

Anders: Oh no!  
 Sally: It was OK. They moved us to another hotel – a very expensive one! It was beautiful ... look!

Anders: Oh, it's lovely!  
 Sally: It was great... very clean, and our room was big! And the people in the hotel were really friendly ... we were very happy there!

Anders: How was the food?  
 Sally: We loved it! The hotel restaurant was great. We tried lots of typical French food. It wasn't cheap, but it was delicious!

Anders: Mmm! Was the weather good?  
 Sally: Yes. On Saturday we walked around the city streets – the buildings in Paris are beautiful. We visited a food market and tried some cheese. In the afternoon we walked along the Champs-Élysées. It's a famous street with lots of expensive shops, but we didn't buy anything! On Sunday we visited the Louvre Museum and looked at the famous paintings there.

Anders: It sounds like a great weekend!  
 Sally: Yeah, it was perfect!

### Audio 8.03

- 1 He didn't go to work yesterday.
- 2 I didn't do any exercise last week.
- 3 We didn't have a barbecue at the weekend.
- 4 They didn't meet us yesterday.
- 5 I didn't get the bus to work today.
- 6 She didn't read the email I sent.



### Audio 8.04

- 1 They didn't get up early.
- 2 I didn't drink any coffee.
- 3 We didn't go out last night.
- 4 She didn't buy me a present.

### Audio 8.05

**1**

Ticket Seller: Can I help you?  
 Customer: Could I have a ticket to San José please?  
 Ticket Seller: For today?  
 Customer: Yes, please. I'd like to leave this morning.  
 Ticket Seller: OK. Is that a single or a return?  
 Customer: A return please – going and coming back today.  
 Ticket Seller: OK. That's \$35.50.  
 Customer: Here you go. What time is the next train?  
 Ticket Seller: Let me check. It leaves at 8.45.  
 Customer: Great. What time does it arrive in San José?  
 Ticket Seller: It arrives at 9.30.  
 Customer: Thanks. What platform is it?  
 Ticket Seller: It leaves from platform 18.  
 Customer: Thanks.

**2**

Jack: Excuse me.  
 Passer-by: Can I help you?  
 Jack: Yes. Is there a ticket machine here? The ticket office isn't open, and we want to go to the airport.  
 Passer-by: Yes, it's over there. Next to gate 5.  
 Jack and Ruth: Thank you.  
 Jack: OK, let's see ... two tickets to Amsterdam Airport ... singles ... leaving now ... €28.  
 OK, erm, pay with card ... have you got your card, Ruth?  
 Ruth: Sure. Here you go.  
 Jack: Thanks. OK, let's go! The next bus is at 8 o'clock ... only five minutes!  
 Ruth: What gate does it leave from?  
 Jack: Erm, let's see ... Gate 1.  
 Ruth: Look! It's over there.

**3**

Ticket Seller: Hi, how can I help you?  
 Customer: I'd like to buy a monthly pass, please.  
 Ticket Seller: Sure. From today?  
 Customer: No, from tomorrow, please.  
 Ticket Seller: OK. That's £62.50.  
 Customer: Here you go.  
 Ticket Seller: Thank you. OK, here you go. You can use it on any bus in Manchester.  
 Customer: Great! Thank you.

### Audio 8.06

- 1 Can I buy a monthly pass for the city?
- 2 What time does the last train leave?
- 3 The next bus is at 9 o'clock.
- 4 The train leaves from platform 1.

### Audio 8.07

- 1 A: How much is a return?  
 B: It's £21.15.
- 2 A: How much is a single to Poznan?  
 B: It's €12.90.
- 3 A: A monthly pass, please.  
 B: That's \$60.45.
- 4 A: How much is a single?  
 B: It's €82.30.
- 5 A: A return to Heathrow Airport, please.  
 B: £40.90, please.
- 6 A: A single to Dunedin, please.  
 B: That's \$35.15.

### Audio 8.08 and 8.09

A: Can I help you?  
 B: Can I have a single to Málaga please?  
 A: For today?  
 B: Yes, please.  
 A: For what time?  
 B: What time's the next train?  
 A: Let me check. It leaves at 11.45.  
 B: And when does it arrive in Málaga?  
 A: It arrives at 2.30 p.m.  
 B: That's great.  
 A: OK. That's one single to Málaga.  
 B: How much is it?  
 A: That's €32.50.  
 B: Thanks. What platform is it?  
 A: The Málaga trains leave from platform 3.  
 B: Thanks very much.

## LEAD-IN

- 1A** 1 pizza 4 restaurant  
2 photo 5 park  
3 bus 6 coffee
- 1B** A 3 B 1 C 4 D 6 E 2 F 5
- 2A** a two d eight  
b 4 e 10  
c seven
- 2B** 2 2/two 6 6/six  
3 5/five 7 8/eight  
4 10/ten 8 7/seven  
5 3/three
- 3A** 1 Sunday 5 Tuesday  
2 Thursday 6 Saturday  
3 Monday 7 Wednesday  
4 Friday
- 3B** 2 Tuesday 5 Friday  
3 Wednesday 6 Saturday  
4 Thursday
- 4A** 1 d 2 f 3 e 4 a 5 c 6 b
- 4B** 1 page 5 English  
2 repeat 6 know  
3 don't 7 what's  
4 understand 8 thank

## UNIT 1

### Lesson 1A

#### VOCABULARY

- 1** 1 Good afternoon  
2 Hello  
3 Bye  
4 See you  
5 Hi  
6 Hey  
7 Good night  
8 Bye
- 2** 1 b 2 a 3 a 4 b 5 a 6 a

#### GRAMMAR

- 3** 1 I'm from India.  
2 I'm not from Poland.  
3 Are you a student?  
4 You are South Korean.  
5 You aren't Vietnamese.  
6 Are you from the US?  
7 I'm not a teacher.  
8 Where are you from?

- 4** 1 a 2 b 3 b 4 c

- 5A** 1 I'm  
2 I'm  
3 Where are  
4 I'm from  
5 Are you  
6 I'm not  
7 Are you  
8 Yes

#### PRONUNCIATION

- 6** 1 B 2 A 3 A 4 B

#### LISTENING

- 7A** 1 B

- 7B** 1 French 6 Student  
2 Marseilles 7 British  
3 Student 8 Cardiff  
4 Japanese 9 Teacher  
5 Osaka

- 7C** 1 I'm 4 from  
2 meet 5 Where  
3 Are 6 not

#### WRITING

- 8A** 1 Warsaw 4 Zurich  
2 Peter 5 Wang  
3 Switzerland 6 Shanghai

- 8B** Ewa: Hello everyone. I'm Ewa. I'm from Warsaw in Poland. Where are you from?  
Peter: Hi Ewa, I'm Peter. I'm from Geneva in Switzerland.  
Noemi: Hello everyone, I'm Noemi. I'm also Swiss.  
Peter: Really? Where are you from? Are you from Geneva?  
Noemi: No, I'm not. I'm from Zurich.  
Wang: Hi, I'm Wang. I'm Chinese. I'm from Shanghai.  
Ewa: Hi Wang. Are you in China now?  
Wang: No, I'm not. I'm in the UK.

- 9** Sample answer:  
M: Hello, I'm Meera. I'm from Mumbai in India.  
P: Hi Meera. I'm Patrick. Are you in Mumbai now?  
M: No, I'm not. I'm in New York. Where are you from?  
P: I'm from Birmingham in the UK, but I'm in Poznan in Poland now.  
N: Hi, I'm Nina.  
P: Where are you from Nina?  
N: I'm from Paris in France.  
M: Are you in Paris now?  
N: No, I'm not. I'm in Mexico City in Mexico now.

### Lesson 1B

#### VOCABULARY

- 1** 1 B 2 F 3 A 4 E 5 C 6 D
- 2** 1 driver 4 player  
2 worker 5 designer  
3 officer 6 assistant

- 3** 1 an 2 a 3 an 4 a 5 a 6 a

#### GRAMMAR

- 4** 1 b 2 c 3 b 4 a 5 c 6 b
- 5** 1 Elena isn't a police officer. ~~She~~ **She's** a businesswoman.  
2 A: Is Anya a nurse?  
B: Yes, ~~she's~~ **she is**.  
3 The Eiffel Tower isn't in Rome. ~~She's~~ **It's** in Paris.  
4 ~~He is~~ **Is he** a taxi driver?  
5 Where **is** Diego ~~is~~ from?  
6 ~~He's are~~ from South Korea.  
7 A: Is Laura a digital designer?  
B: Yes, she ~~are~~ **is**.  
8 What's ~~lapiz~~ in English?
- 6** 1 She's from Beijing.  
2 He's a businessperson.  
3 It isn't in London / It's not in London.  
4 Where's Sophie from?  
5 Is he a teacher?  
6 What's Jack's job?  
7 She isn't / She's not an office worker. She's a shop assistant.  
8 The Colosseum isn't in Milan. It's in Rome.



## PRONUNCIATION

- 7A 1 a businesswoman  
 2 an actor  
 3 a police officer  
 4 a singer  
 5 a taxi driver  
 6 an office worker  
 7 a nurse  
 8 a shop assistant  
 9 a digital designer  
 10 a football player

## READING

8A a digital designer, a doctor, a student, a waiter

8B	name	nationality	job
	Sandra Martínez	Colombian	student / waiter
	Rob Marshall	British	office worker
	Kasia Wójcik	Polish	doctor
	Charlie Cox	American	digital designer / artist

8C 1 F 2 T 3 F 4 T 5 F  
 6 F 7 F 8 F 9 F 10 T

## Lesson 1C

### VOCABULARY

1A 1 J 2 K 3 D 4 P 5 F  
 6 N 7 I 8 O 9 U 10 R

1C 1 S 2 U 3 O 4 R 5 Y 6 E

## PRONUNCIATION

- 2 1 doctor 5 teacher  
 2 park 6 photo  
 3 Argentina 7 artist  
 4 book 8 Vietnam

## HOW TO ...

### 3A B

- 3B 1 Isabel Fernandez  
 2 Spanish  
 3 5 Lennox Street, Bristol  
 4 713 9205

- 3C 1 What's your surname?  
 2 How do you spell your surname?  
 3 What's your first name?  
 4 What's your address?  
 5 What's your phone number?  
 6 Can you repeat that please?

## SPEAKING

- 4 1 help 5 Sorry  
 2 moment 6 right  
 3 spell 7 Perfect  
 4 wrong 8 problem

## Lesson 1D

### GRAMMAR

1A 1 a 2 a 3 an 4 a 5 an 6 an 7 a 8 a

- 1B 1 purses  
 2 wallets  
 3 umbrellas  
 4 laptops  
 5 apples

- 6 American passports  
 7 mobile phones  
 8 countries

- 2 1 I have two mobile phones.  
 2 We have an umbrella.  
 3 Teri has a bottle of water.  
 4 I have an apple in my bag.  
 5 My city has three supermarkets.  
 6 I have keys in my bag.

3 1 c 2 b 3 b 4 a

## LISTENING

4A 1 B 2 C

- 4B 1 British  
 2 Sheffield  
 3 London  
 4 police officer  
 5 Brazilian  
 6 Manaus  
 7 Washington  
 8 digital designer

4C 1 T 2 F 3 F 4 F 5 T 6 F

## UNIT 2

## Lesson 2A

### VOCABULARY

- 1A 1 eleven  
 2 twelve  
 3 thirteen  
 4 fourteen  
 5 fifteen  
 6 sixteen  
 7 seventeen  
 8 eighteen  
 9 nineteen

1B 1 80 2 100 3 90 4 30 5 60  
 6 50 7 20 8 40

1C 1 12 2 73 3 89 4 19 5 30  
 6 99 7 13 8 22 9 46 10 60

## PRONUNCIATION

2 1 b 2 a 3 a 4 b 5 a 6 b 7 b 8 a

## VOCABULARY

- 3A 1 new 5 difficult  
 2 tired 6 friendly  
 3 good 7 favourite  
 4 young 8 beautiful

- 3B 1 difficult 4 old  
 2 big / large 5 bad  
 3 sad / unhappy

- 3C 1 tired 4 beautiful  
 2 new 5 friendly  
 3 favourite 6 easy

## GRAMMAR

4A 1 c 2 b 3 a 4 b

- 4B 1 Who 5 Are  
 2 They're 6 not  
 3 Where 7 they  
 4 from 8 Yes

- 4D 1** A: Where are you and Zeynep from?  
B: We are from Turkey.
- 2** A: Are Jane and Andy doctors?  
B: No, they're not.
- 3** A: Are the bikes new?  
B: No, they're old.
- 4** A: Are John and Simon cold?  
B: Yes, they are.
- 5** A: Who are they?  
B: They're my friends.
- 6** A: Are your parents Australian?  
B: Yes, they are.

## READING

**5A 1** c **2** a

**5B** A

**5C 1** T **2** F **3** F **4** T **5** T **6** F

- 5D 1** happy **4** good  
**2** cold **5** old  
**3** small

## Lesson 2B

### VOCABULARY

- |                    |                    |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| <b>1 1</b> mother  | <b>6</b> son       |
| <b>2</b> wife      | <b>7</b> brother   |
| <b>3</b> father    | <b>8</b> sister    |
| <b>4</b> husband   | <b>9</b> daughter  |
| <b>5</b> parents   | <b>10</b> children |
| <b>2 1</b> parents | <b>4</b> sister    |
| <b>2</b> mother    | <b>5</b> husband   |
| <b>3</b> father    | <b>6</b> children  |
| <b>3A 1</b> men    | <b>4</b> baby      |
| <b>2</b> girls     | <b>5</b> woman's   |
| <b>3</b> people    |                    |
| <b>3B 1</b> babies | <b>4</b> people    |
| <b>2</b> child     | <b>5</b> woman     |
| <b>3</b> men       |                    |

### PRONUNCIATION

- |                           |                          |
|---------------------------|--------------------------|
| <b>4A 1</b> <u>sister</u> | <b>5</b> <u>children</u> |
| <b>2</b> <u>brother</u>   | <b>6</b> <u>people</u>   |
| <b>3</b> <u>husband</u>   | <b>7</b> <u>women</u>    |
| <b>4</b> <u>parents</u>   | <b>8</b> <u>daughter</u> |

### GRAMMAR

**5A 1** c **2** c **3** a **4** b **5** c **6** a **7** b **8** a

- |                  |                |
|------------------|----------------|
| <b>5B 1</b> your | <b>5</b> Their |
| <b>2</b> his     | <b>6</b> my    |
| <b>3</b> our     | <b>7</b> Her   |
| <b>4</b> Its     |                |

- |                |                  |
|----------------|------------------|
| <b>5C 1</b> My | <b>5</b> they're |
| <b>2</b> He's  | <b>6</b> Our     |
| <b>3</b> His   | <b>7</b> Her     |
| <b>4</b> Our   | <b>8</b> Its     |

### LISTENING

**6A** He has three children.

- 6B 1** Giulia  
**2** Sofia  
**3** Olivia

- |                          |                  |
|--------------------------|------------------|
| <b>6C 1</b> their garden | <b>5</b> isn't   |
| <b>2</b> 21              | <b>6</b> teacher |
| <b>3</b> students        | <b>7</b> Italy   |
| <b>4</b> Vancouver       | <b>8</b> Italian |

## WRITING

**7A** This is a photo of my brother Dave and his family on holiday in London. Dave's wife Lisa is Australian and Dave's from the USA. Dave's a doctor and Lisa's a businesswoman. They have two sons aged five and six. Their names are Otis and Ralph. They're very happy children!

- 7B 1** This is Amelia and her son Louis.  
**2** My mum is British and my dad is German.  
**3** My bike is new and it's very good!  
**4** They have a son and a daughter.  
**5** Jack is cold and tired.  
**6** Their names are Clare and Eddy.

**7D** Sample answer

This is my friend, Li Na and her husband Wang Wei. She is my friend from university. They are from Singapore. Li Na is an office worker and Wang Wei is a teacher. They have two children, a son and a daughter. Their names are Li Jun and An Qi.

## Lesson 2C

### VOCABULARY

**1A 1** D **2** A **3** E **4** B **5** C

- |                 |                |
|-----------------|----------------|
| <b>1B 1</b> bad | <b>6</b> great |
| <b>2</b> good   | <b>7</b> OK    |
| <b>3</b> fine   | <b>8</b> good  |
| <b>4</b> well   | <b>9</b> well  |
| <b>5</b> well   | <b>10</b> good |

### HOW TO ...

**2A** a, c

- |                   |                   |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| <b>2B 1</b> white | <b>4</b> friendly |
| <b>2</b> tired    | <b>5</b> school   |
| <b>3</b> Joe      |                   |

- 2C 1** How is your new car?  
**2** I'm very happy with it.  
**3** Not bad, but I'm very tired.  
**4** My father isn't very well.

### PRONUNCIATION

**3A 1** e **2** c **3** d **4** f **5** b **6** a

### SPEAKING

- |                 |                |
|-----------------|----------------|
| <b>4A 1</b> see | <b>5</b> happy |
| <b>2</b> things | <b>6</b> time  |
| <b>3</b> bad    | <b>7</b> chat  |
| <b>4</b> How's  | <b>8</b> later |

## Lesson 2D

### GRAMMAR

- |                      |                 |
|----------------------|-----------------|
| <b>1A 2</b> a person | <b>5</b> manner |
| <b>3</b> a place     | <b>6</b> an age |
| <b>4</b> a time      |                 |

- 1B 1** How old is Nasim?  
**2** What's Jenny's favourite book?  
**3** When is our English class?  
**4** How are things?  
**5** Where are you from?  
**6** Who is your favourite football player?

- |                  |                |
|------------------|----------------|
| <b>1C 1</b> When | <b>4</b> Where |
| <b>2</b> How     | <b>5</b> How   |
| <b>3</b> Who     | <b>6</b> What  |

**1D 1** c **2** b **3** c **4** a



## READING

2A 1 shop 2 Canada

2B 1 T 2 F 3 T 4 F 5 T 6 T

2C 1 f 2 e 3 d 4 c 5 b 6 a 7 a 8 g

## REVIEW 1-2

## GRAMMAR

- 1 1 Hi, I'm Javier.  
2 Are you a student?  
3 Yes, I am.  
4 I'm Marco.  
5 Where are you from, Marco?  
6 I'm Italian.  
7 Where are you from?  
8 I'm from Spain.
- 2 1 a 2 c 3 b 4 a 5 c 6 b
- 3 1 Who 4 aren't  
2 They're 5 they  
3 Are 6 are
- 4 1 's 7 isn't  
2 'm 8 's  
3 's 9 are  
4 's 10 's  
5 are 11 aren't  
6 're 12 're
- 5 1 b 2 a 3 c 4 a
- 6 1 how; Where 3 How old; When  
2 Who; Where 4 What's; what's

## VOCABULARY

- 7A 1 hey  
2 good morning  
3 hi  
4 see you  
5 good evening  
6 good night  
7 goodbye  
8 bye  
9 good afternoon  
10 hello
- 7B 1 See you  
2 Good morning  
3 Bye  
4 Good afternoon
- 8A 1 Brazilian  
2 French  
3 South Korean  
4 Turkish  
5 Indian  
6 American  
7 Swiss  
8 Vietnamese  
9 British  
10 German
- 8B 1 Chinese 4 The UK  
2 Italy 5 Vietnamese  
3 Swiss
- 9 1 g 2 e 3 b 4 a 5 c 6 f 7 d
- 10 1 doctor 5 player  
2 driver 6 waiter  
3 officer 7 office  
4 teacher 8 assistant

- 11 2 fifty-nine 6 ninety-one  
3 forty 7 fifty-two  
4 seventy-eight 8 forty-six  
5 eighty-three
- 12A 1 father 3 daughter  
2 mother 4 son
- 12B 1 husband 4 parents  
2 brother 5 children  
3 wife 6 sister
- 13 1 small 4 difficult  
2 happy 5 old  
3 good 6 hot

## UNIT 3

## Lesson 3A

## VOCABULARY

- 1A 1 car 5 watch  
2 bed 6 camera  
3 bike 7 guitar  
4 ring 8 coffee machine
- 1B 1 B 2 D 3 C 4 G 5 H 6 F 7 A 8 E
- 1C 1 b 2 c 3 b 4 a 5 c 6 a
- 2 yellow, white, blue, orange, green, brown, pink, black, purple, red

## GRAMMAR

- 3A 1 Hassan's new bike is light purple and yellow.  
2 My father's mother is from Budapest.  
3 Zehra is my friend Berat's sister.  
4 What is Federica's phone number?  
5 Olivia's guitar is Spanish.  
6 Is that Lian's new car?  
7 Antoni's watch is Italian.  
8 Seo-Yeon's favourite thing is her cat.

- 3B 2 P 3 C 4 C 5 P 6 C 7 P 8 P
- 3C 1 b 2 c 3 b 4 a

## PRONUNCIATION

- 4A 1 b 2 b 3 a 4 c 5 b 6 c 7 a 8 c

## READING

- 5A camera, coffee machine, guitar
- 5B 2 c 3 b 4 a 5 c 6 c 7 a 8 b

## WRITING

- 6A B
- 6B 1 but 5 and  
2 and 6 but  
3 but 7 but  
4 but 8 but
- 6C 1 and 3 and  
2 but 4 but
- 6D Sample answer  
I have three favourite things. One of them is my ring. It's from my husband and it's very old. It's beautiful! I also love my watch. It's from Switzerland and it's very expensive! Another favourite thing is my picture of the mountains in Germany. It's from my daughter and I love it!

## Lesson 3B

### VOCABULARY

- 1A** 1 scissors 4 tablet  
2 mouse 5 pencil  
3 sticky notes 6 glasses

- 1B** 1 headphones  
2 keyboard  
3 mouse  
4 glasses  
5 notebook  
6 pencils  
7 pens  
8 sticky notes  
9 bottle of water  
10 cup  
11 plant  
12 scissors

- 1C** 1 computer  
2 keyboard  
3 mouse  
4 notebooks  
5 pens  
6 headphones  
7 bottle  
8 book

### GRAMMAR

- 2A** 1 I have an old phone.  
2 I don't have any pencils on my desk.  
3 Do Petr and Jun have any children?  
4 We have some friends from Vietnam.  
5 Do they have any headphones?  
6 The students don't have any books.

- 2B** 1 do 6 an  
2 have 7 any  
3 have 8 do  
4 don't 9 some  
5 a 10 don't

- 2C** 1 c 2 b 3 c 4 c 5 b 6 b 7 b 8 a

### PRONUNCIATION

- 3A** 1 A: Do you have any scissors?  
B: No, I don't.  
2 A: Do you have a bottle of water?  
B: Yes, I do.  
3 A: Do they have a car?  
B: Yes, they do.  
4 A: Do we have any pencils?  
B: No, we don't.

### LISTENING

- 4A** c

**4B**

	Luca	Mia
a book	✓	
a notebook		✓
glasses	✓	
a bottle of water	✓	✓
a pen		✓
a tablet	✓	✓

- 4C** 1 F 2 T 3 F 4 F 5 T 6 T 7 F 8 F

- 4D** 1 questions  
2 some  
3 any

- 4 big  
5 red  
6 different

## Lesson 3C

### VOCABULARY

- 1A** 1 coat 7 shoes  
2 top 8 shirt  
3 suit 9 skirt  
4 jumper 10 dress  
5 jacket 11 jeans  
6 T-shirt 12 trousers

- 1B** 1 T-shirt 5 dress  
2 jeans 6 coat  
3 suit 7 jumper  
4 shoes 8 skirt

- 1C** 1 D 2 B 3 A 4 C

### HOW TO ...

- 2A** jeans, top, jacket

- 2B** 1 light 5 small  
2 50 6 red  
3 yellow 7 large  
4 30 8 75

- 2C** 1 How much is this jumper?  
2 Can I try these shoes on?  
3 The changing rooms are over there.  
4 Do you have a large size?

### PRONUNCIATION

- 3 1 F 2 F 3 U 4 F 5 U 6 U

### SPEAKING

- 4A** 1 Excuse 6 size  
2 help 7 medium  
3 much 8 Here  
4 £25 9 changing  
5 on 10 over

## Lesson 3D

### GRAMMAR

- 1A** 1 Do 6 don't  
2 love 7 like  
3 hate 8 do  
4 really like 9 think  
5 Do you like 10 really

- 1C** 1 b 2 a 3 b 4 c

- 1D** 1 don't 4 hate/dislike  
2 hate/dislike 5 love  
3 think 6 favourite

### LISTENING

- 2A** a clothes shop; a shoe shop; a sports shop; a bookshop; a supermarket; a butcher's

- 2B** 1 bookshops  
2 butcher's shops; clothes shops  
3 computer shops  
4 bookshops; clothes shops; shoe shops  
5 clothes shops  
6 supermarkets; sports shops; shoe shops

- 2C** 1 don't buy 4 computer shop  
2 big 5 clothes shop  
3 books 6 dark



## UNIT 4

### Lesson 4A

#### VOCABULARY

- 1A** **A** fruit juice **E** pasta  
**B** a tomato **F** a carrot  
**C** cheese **G** steak  
**D** an orange **H** bread

#### 1B and C

fruit	vegetables	meat	drinks	other
an orange	a carrot	steak	fruit juice	pasta
an apple	a tomato	chicken	juice	bread
a banana	a mushroom	beef	milk	cheese
	a potato			cereal
				an egg
				fish
				rice
				a sandwich

- 1D** **1** A banana  
**2** Chicken  
**3** tomato  
**4** vegetables  
**5** bread  
**6** Milk

- 2A** **1** rice **5** sandwich  
**2** eggs **6** apple  
**3** carrots **7** banana  
**4** mushrooms **8** coffee

- 3A** **1** apple  
**2** banana  
**3** beef  
**4** bread  
**5** cheese  
**6** chicken  
**7** mushroom  
**8** orange  
**9** pasta  
**10** potato  
**11** sandwich  
**12** tomato

#### GRAMMAR

- 4A** **1** not often **4** usually  
**2** sometimes **5** always  
**3** often

- 4B** **1** never **4** often  
**2** usually **5** don't often  
**3** always **6** sometimes

- 4C** **1** I often drink fruit juice.  
**2** I never eat mushrooms.  
**3** Do you usually have cereal for breakfast?  
**4** My parents don't often eat fruit.  
**5** I don't always eat eggs on Saturday.  
**6** Do you often have rice for lunch?  
**7** Ren and Aoi sometimes have chicken for dinner. /  
 Ren and Aoi have chicken for dinner sometimes.  
**8** I always have two cups of coffee in the morning.

- 4D** **1** b **2** c **3** a **4** c

#### LISTENING

- 5A** **1** F **2** F **3** T

- 5B** **a** 2 **b** 7 **c** 4 **d** 1 **e** 3 **f** 5 **g** 6 **h** 8

- 5C** **1** eat  
**2** usually  
**3** Saturdays  
**4** coffee  
**5** cheese  
**6** sometimes  
**7** family  
**8** fish

#### WRITING

- 6A** **1** b **2** c

- 6B** **1** Hey **4** usually  
**2** well **5** Speak  
**3** questions **6** love

- 6C** **1** D **2** F **3** C **4** B **5** A **6** E

Sample answer

Hi Juana,

How are you? I've very well, thanks. I have some news.

I have a new job and a new apartment! I'm in Bogotá now and I really like it here.

Are you in China now? Do you like your new job? Is the food in Beijing good? I really love Chinese food! What do you usually eat?

Speak soon,

Omar

### Lesson 4B

- 1A** **1** b **2** c **3** a **4** a **5** c **6** b

- 1B** **1** get **6** finish  
**2** have **7** get  
**3** leave **8** make  
**4** go **9** watch  
**5** start **10** go

- 2A** **1** C **2** F **3** D **4** E **5** B **6** A

- 2B** **1** C **2** E **3** B **4** A **5** D **6** F

#### GRAMMAR

- 3A** **1** makes **5** watches  
**2** go **6** doesn't  
**3** starts **7** does  
**4** study **8** does

- 3B** **1** a **2** b **3** c **4** b

- 3C** **1** is  
**2** gets up  
**3** doesn't have  
**4** has  
**5** makes  
**6** leaves  
**7** goes  
**8** doesn't finish  
**9** gets  
**10** makes  
**11** studies  
**12** starts

- 4A** **1** b **2** b **3** a **4** c **5** b  
**6** a **7** b **8** a **9** c **10** b

#### READING

- 5A** No.

- 5B** **1** J **2** J **3** K **4** J **5** J **6** K **7** J **8** K

- 5C** **1** F **2** T **3** F **4** T **5** F **6** T **7** T **8** F

## Lesson 4C

- 1A** 1 Pastries  
2 Sandwiches  
3 Toast  
4 Toast and eggs  
5 Latte  
6 Espresso  
7 Americano  
8 Tea  
9 Fruit juice  
10 Mineral water

**1B** 1 E 2 F 3 H 4 B 5 A 6 C 7 G 8 D

- 1C** 1 sugar 4 glass  
2 cup 5 chopsticks  
3 pepper 6 bowl

## HOW TO ...

**2A** 1 a 2 b

- 2B** 1 cheese 4 £2.20  
2 brown 5 sparkling  
3 two coffees 6 £19.50

**3A** 1, 2, 4

- 4A** 1 breakfast 6 Anything  
2 sandwiches 7 mineral  
3 chocolate 8 sparkling  
4 Tea 9 much  
5 sugar 10 moment

## Lesson 4D

- 1A** 1 Does Akira like animals?  
2 Does Mark make dinner?  
3 Does your son have a job?  
4 Does Sandra live near you?  
5 Does Kian have children?  
6 Does Diana eat eggs for breakfast?  
7 Does the French class start at nine?  
8 Does Elias work in an office?

**1B** 1 d 2 b 3 f 4 g 5 c 6 a 7 h 8 e

- 1C** 1 Does 5 Is  
2 Do 6 Does  
3 Are 7 Do  
4 Does 8 Does

## READING

**2A** A; C; D; F

**2B** 1 e 2 b 3 f 4 c 5 a 6 d

**2C** 1 T 2 F 3 T 4 T 5 F 6 F

## REVIEW 3-4

## GRAMMAR

- 1** 1 Is Soo-jeong Andy's wife?  
2 They're Mario's children.  
3 correct  
4 Piotr and Layan's house's near here.  
5 That's my sister's office.  
6 correct  
7 It's my son's birthday today.  
8 My parents are doctors.
- 2** 1 have; don't  
2 Do; do  
3 any; some  
4 Do; have

- 3** 1 I really like your dress.  
2 Do you like video games?  
3 We don't like fish.  
4 I don't like supermarkets very much.  
5 I really love my new camera.  
6 My parents really hate big cities / My parents hate really big cities.  
7 I think Berlin is a great place.  
8 They really dislike coffee.

- 4** 1 usually 4 never  
2 always 5 sometimes  
3 often 6 don't often

- 5** 1 doesn't have  
2 leaves  
3 goes  
4 doesn't live  
5 drinks  
6 doesn't like  
7 studies  
8 has

**6** 1 b 2 c 3 a 4 b

## VOCABULARY

- 7** 1 bed 7 pink  
2 blue 8 car  
3 red 9 brown  
4 bike 10 white  
5 purple 11 camera  
6 guitar 12 ring

**8** 1 B 2 D 3 E 4 H 5 C  
6 G 7 F 8 A 9 J 10 I

- 9** 1 shirt 5 shoes  
2 trousers 6 jacket  
3 skirt 7 coat  
4 jumper 8 T-shirt

- 10** 1 rice 4 tomato  
2 cheese 5 bread  
3 pasta

- 11** 1 milk 4 rice  
2 egg 5 mushrooms  
3 banana 6 beef

- 12** 1 finish 5 watch  
2 leaves 6 get up  
3 starts 7 have  
4 makes 8 goes

- 13** 1 Americano 6 sandwich  
2 latte 7 glass  
3 bowl 8 sparkling  
4 pastry 9 spoon  
5 toast 10 forks

## UNIT 5

## Lesson 5A

## VOCABULARY

- 1A** 1 get 5 help  
2 say 6 take  
3 call 7 thank  
4 send 8 forget

**1B** 1 b 2 c 3 a 4 c 5 b 6 a 7 c 8 b

- 1C** 1 says 5 helps  
2 gets 6 with  
3 for 7 thanks  
4 to 8 for



## GRAMMAR

- 2A 1 I 5 her  
2 you 6 we  
3 him 7 them  
4 it

2B 1 b 2 a 3 c 4 a

- 2C 1 it 4 him  
2 them 5 her  
3 me 6 us

## PRONUNCIATION

- 3A 1 I really like him.  
2 She never helps us.  
3 Please call her tomorrow.  
4 They don't like it.  
5 He always thanks us.  
6 She usually gets him coffee.

## READING

4A c

my friend Jay	my colleague Jay
listens to me	doesn't listen to my ideas
has lunch with me	forgets important information
helps me with my problems	uses my things

4C 1 F 2 F 3 T 4 F 5 T 6 T 7 F 8 F

## WRITING

- 5A 1 good 3 listens  
2 says 4 doesn't send

- 5B 1 she 6 us  
2 She 7 she  
3 she 8 us  
4 her 9 We  
5 she 10 her

- 6 Sample answer  
My colleague Baris is great! He's really friendly. He always gets a coffee for me in the morning and sometimes he gets me a pastry, too. He never forgets my birthday – he always gives me a cake! He listens to me and helps me with my work problems. He has lots of good ideas. We have lunch together every day. I like Baris a lot.

## Lesson 5B

## VOCABULARY

- 1A 1 use 4 read  
2 dance 5 sleep  
3 play 6 remember

1B 1 a 2 b 3 e 4 f 5 d 6 c

- 1C A drive D paint  
B catch E run  
C sing F throw

1D 1 b 2 b 3 c 4 c 5 b 6 a 7 c 8 b

- 1E 1 drive 6 use  
2 read 7 use  
3 speak 8 type  
4 speak 9 remember  
5 remember

## GRAMMAR

- 2A 1 Nisha can't drive a car.  
2 Omar can dance very well.  
3 Can you speak Japanese?  
4 My father can't use his coffee machine.  
5 Can Bibi cook Turkish food?  
6 Abdul can sing a song in Spanish.  
7 I'm sorry, but I can't remember your name.  
8 Can you remember important dates?

2B 1 b 2 b 3 a 4 b

- 2C 1 A: Can, speak; B: can, can, speak  
2 A: Can, drive; B: can't  
3 A: Can, paint; B: can, can, paint  
4 A: play; B: can't, can, sing  
5 A: Can, read; B: can't  
6 A: Can, play; B: can

## PRONUNCIATION

3A 1 b 2 b 3 c 4 a 5 b 6 b

## LISTENING

4A A, C

	Martin can	Martin can, but not very well	Martin can't
play the guitar			✓
play piano	✓		
sing a song in English	✓		
read a map	✓		
use a computer	✓		
type with his eyes closed		✓	
swim			✓
play football		✓	

- 4C 1 tango 4 birthdays  
2 salsa 5 five  
3 paint 6 run

## Lesson 5C

## VOCABULARY

- 1A 1 cheap 3 closed  
2 right 4 early  
1B 1 closed 4 open  
2 wrong 5 late  
3 cheap 6 right

1C 1 d 2 f 3 a 4 c 5 b 6 e

## HOW TO ...

2A 1 c 2 b

2B 1 T 2 F 3 F 4 T 5 F 6 T

- 2C 1 Could you drive me home please?  
2 Can I get you a coffee?  
3 I'm sorry, I can't at the moment.  
4 Could you do it for me?

## PRONUNCIATION

- 3A 1 Could you help me?  
2 Could you make me a coffee?  
3 Could you send me an email?  
4 Could you drive me home?  
5 Could you type the report?  
6 Could you get some milk?

# ANSWER KEY

## SPEAKING

- 4A** 1 help 2 course 3 can't 4 Can  
5 you 6 right 7 so 8 problem

## Lesson 5D

### GRAMMAR

- 1A** 2 second 3 third 4 seventh 5 eleventh  
6 fifteenth 7 twentieth 8 thirty-first  
**1B** 1 twelve 2 third 3 twenty-seventh 4 fourth  
5 three 6 first 7 two 8 twentieth

- 1C** 1 f 2 d 3 h 4 g 5 e 6 a 7 b 8 c

### LISTENING

- 2A** A (Sam), E (Theo)

- 2B** 1 A 2 B

- 2C** 1 doesn't usually do anything  
2 forget 3 picnics 4 loves  
5 at his parents' house 6 father 7 sometimes

- 2D** 1 It's the twenty-fifth of July.  
2 My birthday is on the first of May.  
3 Today is the eighteenth of February.  
4 His birthday is on the third of April.

## UNIT 6

### Lesson 6A

#### VOCABULARY

1A	Rooms / parts of a house	Furniture / objects
	bathroom	armchair
	bedroom	bath
	door	bed
	floor	chair
	kitchen	cooker
	living room	plant
	wall	sofa
	window	table
		television
		toilet

- 1B** 1 c 2 a 3 c 4 a 5 b 6 c 7 a 8 b

- 1C** 1 armchair 2 kitchen 3 fridge  
4 bed 5 lamp 6 garden

### GRAMMAR

- 2A** 1 on 2 in 3 near 4 next to  
5 in front of 6 under 7 between 8 behind  
**2B** 1 in 2 on 3 near 4 on  
5 behind 6 next to 7 between 8 in front of

- 2C** 1 in 2 next 3 in 4 on 5 near  
6 in 7 on 8 in front 9 under

### PRONUNCIATION

- 3A** 1 It's under the window.  
2 It's on the shelf.  
3 It's next to the bath.  
4 It's in front of you.  
5 Is it between the chairs?  
6 Is it near your house?  
7 Is it behind the bed?  
8 Is it in the fridge?

### READING

- 4A** 1 D 2 C 3 B 4 A

- 4B** lighthouse; riverboat

- 4C** 1 T 2 F 3 F 4 F 5 T 6 F

- 4D** 1 L 2 R 3 L 4 R 5 L 6 R 7 R 8 R

- 4E** 1 next to 2 on 3 under  
4 in 5 next to 6 on

### Lesson 6B

#### VOCABULARY

- 1A** 1 airport 2 cinema 3 bus station  
4 shopping centre 5 hospital 6 hotel

- 1B** 1 b 2 c 3 a 4 b 5 c 6 a 7 b 8 a

### GRAMMAR

- 2A** 1 are 2 isn't 3 any 4 is  
5 isn't 6 is 7 aren't 8 any

- 2B** 1 There's 2 are 3 there 4 isn't 5 There's  
6 aren't 7 there's 8 is 9 isn't 10 there's

- 2D** 1 b 2 c 3 c 4 a

### PRONUNCIATION

- 3A** 1 There's\_a very good café.  
2 Are there\_any supermarkets near here?  
3 There\_isn't a park in the area.  
4 There\_are two museums.  
5 Is there\_a Thai restaurant?  
6 No, there\_isn't.

### LISTENING

- 4A** 1 C 2 B 3 A

- 4B** 1 supermarket 2 sports centre 3 restaurants 4 library 5 sports centres 6 an airport

- 4C** 1 T 2 T 3 F 4 F 5 T 6 F

### WRITING

- 5A** 1 D 2 B 3 A 4 C

- 5B** 1 b 2 b 3 a



- 5C** 1 Rome is great because there are lots of museums, parks and shops.  
 2 Correct  
 3 There isn't a cinema, a sports centre or a swimming pool in my town.  
 4 Correct

**6B** Sample answer

Lucca is a small city in the north of Italy. It is about 45 minutes by train from Pisa and it is a great place to visit for the weekend! Lucca is a very old city and has lots of beautiful buildings. There is an interesting art museum and you can walk or cycle around the city walls. There are lots of great restaurants and cafés in Lucca. La Trattoria da Anna has the best pasta in town! There are also some great shops and a market every day in the Piazza San Michele with clothes, bags and cakes.

## Lesson 6C

### VOCABULARY

- 1 1 street 4 cash machine  
 2 buildings 5 car park  
 3 clock 6 bus stop

- 2 1 b 2 b 3 c 4 a 5 b 6 c

### HOW TO ...

- 3A** bus stop, cinema, information desk, lift, post office, restaurant, train station

- 3B** 1 train station  
 2 Jago  
 3 10  
 4 opposite  
 5 post office  
 6 second  
 7 next to  
 8 information desk

### PRONUNCIATION

- 4 1 It's near the supermarket.  
 2 It's next to the sports centre.  
 3 It's to the right of the hospital.  
 4 I'm in front of the train station.  
 5 It's on the left of the library.  
 6 It's opposite the post office.

### SPEAKING

- 5A** 1 Excuse 5 How  
 2 near 6 know  
 3 there 7 opposite  
 4 far 8 next

## Lesson 6D

### GRAMMAR

- 1A** 1 a 5 the  
 2 The 6 an  
 3 a 7 the  
 4 a 8 the

- 1B** 1 b 2 b 3 c 4 a

- 1C** 1 the 6 a  
 2 a 7 a  
 3 the 8 the  
 4 The 9 a  
 5 an 10 the

### READING

- 2A** 1 E 2 C 3 D 4 A

- 2B** 1 F 2 F 3 T 4 F 5 F 6 T

## REVIEW 5-6

### GRAMMAR

- 1 1 d 2 g 3 c 4 f 5 b 6 a 7 e

- 2 1 b 2 c 3 a 4 c 5 a 6 b

- 3 2 Leonora can't play the guitar. Hiro can play the guitar.

- 3 Leonora can drive a car. Hiro can't drive a car.

- 4 Leonora and Hiro can use chopsticks.

- 5 Leonora can't play tennis. Hiro can play tennis.

- 6 Leonora and Hiro can speak two languages.

- 4 2 eleventh 6 second  
 3 tenth 7 third  
 4 first 8 three  
 5 four

- 5 1 b 2 a 3 b 4 c 5 c 6 c 7 a 8 a

- 6 1 There are 5 There's  
 2 there's 6 there's  
 3 there isn't 7 there aren't  
 4 There's 8 there isn't

- 7 1 The 5 the  
 2 a 6 a  
 3 the 7 an  
 4 the 8 the

### VOCABULARY

- 8A** 1 get 5 helps  
 2 thanks 6 call  
 3 takes 7 says  
 4 forget 8 sends

- 8B** 1 paint 6 type  
 2 play 7 run  
 3 swim 8 read  
 4 use 9 remember  
 5 dance 10 sleep

- 9 1 early 3 open  
 2 expensive 4 wrong

- 10 1 bath 6 chair  
 2 fridge 7 sofa  
 3 toilet 8 bed  
 4 cooker 9 armchair  
 5 table 10 television

- 11A** 1 library 5 supermarket  
 2 school 6 cinema  
 3 museum 7 hospital  
 4 bank 8 airport

- 11B** 1 floor 5 exit  
 2 lift 6 cash  
 3 information 7 parking  
 4 stairs 8 stop

## UNIT 7

### Lesson 7A

#### VOCABULARY

- 1A** 1 have 5 wash  
 2 cook 6 visit  
 3 spend 7 do  
 4 clean 8 feed

- 1B** 1 b 2 c 3 b 4 a 5 c 6 b 7 a 8 a

# ANSWER KEY

- 1C** 1 alone  
2 meal  
3 ducks  
4 friends

- 5 museum  
6 bath  
7 nothing  
8 apartment

## GRAMMAR

- 2A** 1 Where  
2 How  
3 What  
4 Why

- 5 When  
6 What  
7 Who  
8 How

- 2B** 1 How do you know Sol?  
2 Who does Tinh live with?  
3 Why do you cycle to work?  
4 What do you do at the weekend?  
5 When does Sadie visit her grandmother?  
6 What time does Geoff finish work?  
7 Where do they usually go on holiday?  
8 What does Benny eat for breakfast?

- 2C** 1 f 2 g 3 h 4 e 5 b 6 d 7 c 8 a

- 2D** 1 What 4 Where  
2 How 5 Who  
3 What 6 Why

## PRONUNCIATION

- 3 1 Where do you live?  
2 Who do you live with?  
3 What do you do?  
4 When do you work?  
5 How do you do it?  
6 Why do you like it?

## LISTENING

- 4A** A, C and D

- 4B** 1 runs 4 bath  
2 Thai 5 paints pictures  
3 green tea 6 friends

- 4C** 1, 2, 4 and 5

## WRITING

- 5A** 1 T 2 F 3 F 4 T 5 T 6 F

- 5B** 1 b 2 c 3 d 4 e 5 a

- 5C** a question mark

- 5D** 1 I play tennis, run in the park and ride my bike.  
2 What do you do to stay healthy?  
3 I play the piano (usually classical music).  
4 Mika often cooks French food.  
5 I usually visit my family at the weekend.  
6 I love my new bike – it's really great!

- 6B** Sample answer

I do lots of different things to relax. On weekdays, I usually go for a walk or a run after work. I go with my friend Choi. She's great! She always helps me with my problems. At the weekend, I get up late. Then I read a book, listen to the radio or watch television. On Saturdays, I usually cook a meal with my husband, then in the evenings we meet friends or go to the cinema. On Sundays I spend some time outside, in the garden or in the park.

## Lesson 7B

### VOCABULARY

- 1A** famous; slow; amazing; fast; rich; strong; weak; poor; best; positive

- 1B** 1 best  
2 famous  
3 fast

- 4 rich  
5 positive  
6 amazing

- 1C** 1 c 2 b 3 b 4 a 5 c 6 c 7 a 8 b

## GRAMMAR

- 2A** 1 was  
2 weren't  
3 were  
4 wasn't

- 5 wasn't  
6 Was  
7 were  
8 was

- 2B** 1 b  
2 c

- 3 a  
4 c

- 2C** 1 were; was  
2 was; was  
3 Were; wasn't; was  
4 were; were  
5 Were; weren't; were  
6 Was; was; was

## PRONUNCIATION

- 3A** 1 W 4 S; W  
2 S 5 W  
3 W 6 S; W

## READING

- 4A** b

- 4B** Photo A

- 4C** 1 F 2 T 3 F 4 F 5 T 6 F

## Lesson 7C

### VOCABULARY





- 1 1 F 2 A 3 C 4 B 5 E 6 D

### HOW TO ...

- 2A** 1 C 2 B 3 A

- 2B** 1 b 2 c 3 a 4 b 5 c 6 a

## PRONUNCIATION

3A				
	backache earache toothache	a cold	stomach ache	a headache

- 4A** 1 sorry 5 hurt  
2 problem 6 Poor  
3 well 7 stay  
4 wrong 8 Get

## Lesson 7D

### GRAMMAR

- 1A** 1 d 2 a 3 h 4 c 5 b 6 f 7 e 8 g

- 1B** 1 a 2 b 3 c 4 a

- 1C** 1 Be  
2 Listen  
3 Don't use  
4 Bring  
5 Speak  
6 Ask  
7 Don't eat  
8 Do  
9 Don't worry  
10 Have



## LISTENING

2A 1 a 2 c, d

2B 1 T 2 F 3 F 4 F 5 T 6 T 7 F 8 F

4C 1 Wear 5 Walk  
2 Remember 6 Wear  
3 Don't eat 7 Drink  
4 Take 8 Listen

## UNIT 8

### Lesson 8A

#### VOCABULARY

1A 1 e 2 h 3 a 4 g 5 i 6 c 7 b 8 d 9 j 10 f

1B 1 stay 6 arrive  
2 want 7 book  
3 relax 8 plan  
4 change 9 walk  
5 travel 10 try

1C 1 book 4 try  
2 arrives 5 changes  
3 travel 6 want

#### GRAMMAR

2A 1 stayed  
2 didn't want  
3 changed  
4 tried  
5 didn't arrive  
6 travelled  
7 stopped  
8 studied

2B 1 c 2 c 3 b 4 a

2C 1 travelled  
2 stayed  
3 was  
4 didn't want  
5 booked  
6 loved  
7 planned  
8 walked  
9 looked  
10 visited  
11 tried  
12 didn't like

#### PRONUNCIATION

3A 1 b 2 a 3 a 4 c 5 a 6 b 7 b 8 c 9 c 10 a

## LISTENING

4A b

4B B, C, D, F

4C 1 7 p.m. 5 expensive  
2 river 6 good  
3 didn't stay 7 cheese  
4 friendly 8 museum

### Lesson 8B

#### VOCABULARY

1A 2 meet 6 have  
3 buy 7 do  
4 play 8 see  
5 go

1B 2 H 3 E 4 D 5 F 6 A 7 G 8 C

1C 1 have 5 play  
2 buy 6 watch  
3 go 7 meet  
4 do 8 see

2 1 b 2 a 3 b 4 c 5 b 6 a

#### GRAMMAR

3A 2 go 6 take  
3 see 7 be  
4 know 8 drink  
5 sleep

3B 1 b 2 c 3 a 4 b

3C 1 had 5 wasn't  
2 didn't get 6 went  
3 read 7 came  
4 met 8 made

#### PRONUNCIATION

4A 1, 3

#### READING

5A Text 1: B, C  
Text 2: A, D

5B 1 O 2 B 3 G 4 O 5 G 6 B

5C 1 T 2 F 3 F 4 F 5 T 6 T

#### WRITING

6A had a bath, played video games, went to a café, went for a run

6B 1 and 4 and  
2 but 5 but  
3 then 6 then

6C Sample answer  
I don't usually do very much at the weekends, but last weekend I had a great weekend! On Friday, I met my best friend after work, and we went to the airport and got the plane to Krakow! It was my first time in Krakow and I loved it! On Saturday we walked around the city centre and looked at the buildings. Then we went to a restaurant and tried lots of Polish food. On Sunday, we visited the castle, then we went to the market and bought presents for our friends.

### Lesson 8C

#### VOCABULARY

1A 1 H 2 G 3 A 4 B 5 E 6 F 7 D 8 C

1B 1 gate  
2 platform  
3 single  
4 ticket machine  
5 monthly pass  
6 return  
7 passenger  
8 ticket office

1C 1 a 2 b 3 c 4 c 5 c 6 a

#### HOW TO ...

2A 1 return 4 1  
2 9.30 5 £62.50  
3 single 6 bus

2B 1 Can I buy a monthly pass for the city?  
2 What time does the last train leave?  
3 The next bus is at 9 o'clock.  
4 The train leaves from platform 1.

# ANSWER KEY

## PRONUNCIATION

3 1 15 2 90 3 60 4 30 5 90 6 15

## SPEAKING

- 4A 1 single 4 much  
2 next 5 platform  
3 arrive 6 leave

## Lesson 8D

### GRAMMAR

- 1A 1 I'd 5 don't want  
2 Do 6 Do  
3 like 7 wouldn't  
4 to meet 8 want

1B 1 b 2 a 3 c 4 a

- 1C 1 would 7 Do  
2 go 8 'd  
3 do 9 play  
4 want 10 like  
5 help 11 do  
6 like 12 like

## READING

2A b

2B 1 F 2 E 3 C 5 - 6 D 5 B 6 A

2C 1 D 2 B 3 C

2D 1 F 2 F 3 F 4 T 5 T 6 F

## REVIEW 7-8

### GRAMMAR

1A 1 b 2 c 3 a 4 c 5 a 6 b

- 1B 2 Where do they live?  
3 What is (What's) your favourite sport?  
4 Why do you drink green tea?  
5 Who do you live with?  
6 How do you spell 'passenger'?  
7 When do you visit your grandparents?  
8 What do you have for dinner?

- 2 1 was; wasn't 4 was; was  
2 were; was 5 were; were  
3 weren't; was 6 was; was

- 3 1 bought 6 saw  
2 came 7 left  
3 gave 8 slept  
4 got 9 wrote  
5 drank 10 did

- 4A 1 Buy  
2 Don't use  
3 Don't take  
4 Don't run  
5 Don't eat or drink  
6 Have

- 4B 1 travelled  
2 wanted  
3 stayed  
4 talked  
5 learned  
6 didn't study  
7 visited  
8 played  
9 walked  
10 arrived  
11 walked  
12 didn't want

- 5 1 I'd like 4 likes  
2 doesn't want 5 to go  
3 Would you like 6 I'd like

### VOCABULARY

- 6 B the shopping  
C my hands  
D a meal  
E my kitchen

- 7 2 best  
3 rich  
4 positive  
5 fast  
6 weak  
7 poor  
8 amazing

- 8 1 hair  
2 eye  
3 ear  
4 nose  
5 mouth  
6 tooth

9 1 b 2 c 3 a 4 c 5 a 6 b 7 a 8 c

- 10 1 watch 4 goes  
2 buy 5 have  
3 do 6 see

- 11 1 last 4 in  
2 yesterday 5 ago  
3 on

- 12 motorbike, passenger, platform, tram, boat, return, plane, underground, single, taxi

## CUMULATIVE REVIEW 1-4

### GRAMMAR

- 1 2 's 10 's  
3 Is 11 What  
4 isn't 12 Where  
5 's 13 's  
6 it 14 Is  
7 it 15 is  
8 's 16 's  
9 's

- 2 2 our 5 your  
3 my 6 my  
4 its

- 3 1 Do you have a car?  
2 Do they have any children?  
3 Do we have English class today?  
4 Do you have a new computer?  
5 Do Ricardo and Jill have a garden?  
6 Do you have my glasses?



- 4 2 We **never** eat meat or fish at home.  
 3 Do you **usually** work at the weekend?  
 4 They **sometimes** have lunch in a café.  
 5 I don't **usually** have eggs for breakfast.  
 6 Hollie and Wu **never** listen to podcasts.  
 7 We **often** eat Japanese food with our friends.  
 8 I **don't often** read the newspaper.  
 9 Do they **always** speak English at home.  
 10 I **often** have a bottle of water in my bag.
- 5 1 Thailand  
 2 American  
 3 Australian  
 4 the USA  
 5 Italian  
 6 Turkey  
 7 Turkish  
 8 Switzerland  
 9 British  
 10 France  
 11 French  
 12 Brazilian
- 6 1 fourteen 5 twenty  
 2 four 6 ten  
 3 sixteen 7 eighty  
 4 twelve 8 five
- 7 1 tired 5 difficult  
 2 favourite 6 bad  
 3 friendly 7 happy  
 4 hot 8 young
- 8 1 jumper  
 2 suit  
 3 trousers  
 4 jeans  
 5 coat  
 6 jacket  
 7 T-shirt  
 8 dress
- 9 2 makes  
 3 leave  
 4 start  
 5 have  
 6 finish  
 7 have  
 8 watches  
 9 listen  
 10 go
- 10 1 help  
 2 moment / minute  
 3 surname  
 4 see  
 5 things  
 6 bad  
 7 Excuse  
 8 much  
 9 try  
 10 size  
 11 coffee  
 12 sugar  
 13 Anything  
 14 white  
 15 much

- 11 1 have 7 his  
 2 is 8 difficult  
 3 young 9 His  
 4 Mexico 10 don't  
 5 My 11 always  
 6 's 12 Do

## CUMULATIVE REVIEW 5-8

## GRAMMAR

- 1 2 it 5 us  
 3 her 6 it  
 4 them
- 2 1 in front of  
 2 on  
 3 next to  
 4 between  
 5 under  
 6 opposite
- 3 1 Who 5 Why  
 2 Where 6 When  
 3 What 7 How  
 4 When 8 What
- 4 1 Is there 6 there's  
 2 There are 7 some  
 3 any 8 an  
 4 aren't 9 a  
 5 There aren't 10 isn't
- 5 1 was 7 was  
 2 were 8 wasn't  
 3 was 9 wasn't  
 4 were 10 were  
 5 was 11 was  
 6 was 12 weren't
- 6 1 travelled, stayed  
 2 studied, didn't like  
 3 didn't watch, listened  
 4 tried, loved  
 5 cleaned, didn't help

## VOCABULARY

- 7 1 called 4 get  
 2 helps 5 thank  
 3 says
- 8 2 expensive 4 early  
 3 wrong 5 open
- 9 1 living  
 2 armchair  
 3 television  
 4 bed  
 5 kitchen  
 6 fridge  
 7 table
- 10 1 cleaned 4 fed  
 2 washed 5 did  
 3 had
- 11 face, eye, foot, tooth, nose, leg
- 12 1 want 5 walk  
 2 change 6 relax  
 3 Travel 7 Plan  
 4 stay 8 try

- 13A** 1 motorbike  
2 tram  
3 bike  
4 plane  
5 underground  
6 boat

- 13B** 1 bike 4 train  
2 bus 5 pass  
3 bus

- 14** 1 help 7 well  
2 course 8 wrong  
3 Can 9 hurt  
4 near 10 Single  
5 far 11 next  
6 matter

- 15** 1 travelled  
2 plane  
3 stayed  
4 her  
5 apartment  
6 walked  
7 was  
8 There was  
9 opposite  
10 tried  
11 it  
12 expensive

## CUMULATIVE REVIEW 1-8

### GRAMMAR

- 1** 1 I'm 5 Where  
2 I'm 6 I'm  
3 are 7 you  
4 I'm 8 not

- 2A** 1 a 2 a 3 a 4 a 5 an 6 a 7 an 8 a

- 2B** 1 bags  
2 books  
3 tablets  
4 cameras  
5 umbrellas  
6 sandwiches  
7 apples  
8 bottles of water

- 3** 1 have  
2 has  
3 have  
4 have  
5 has

- 4** 1 We're  
2 They're  
3 You're  
4 we  
5 they

- 5** 1 What 4 When  
2 How 5 Where  
3 Who / How / Where

- 6** 2 My father's house is really big.  
3 My sister's job is very difficult.  
4 Tunde is Chinara's son.  
5 That's my friend's office.  
6 Is that Karl's bike?  
7 Harry is Jon's cat.  
8 That isn't Bo-Bae's bag

- 7** 2 I really ~~not~~ **dislike** big cities. I like quiet places.  
3 Correct  
4 Kevin ~~hates~~ **loves** purple. It's his favourite colour.  
5 Ga Ram and I ~~very~~ **really** like jazz music.  
6 Do you ~~love~~ **like** our new teacher? I think he's good.  
7 We have three cats. We like ~~a lot~~ **a lot!**  
8 Correct

- 8** 1 works  
2 gets up  
3 travels  
4 takes  
5 checks  
6 listens  
7 walks  
8 starts  
9 doesn't have  
10 has  
11 goes  
12 makes  
13 watches  
14 doesn't look

- 9** 1 Is 5 Is  
2 isn't 6 isn't  
3 Does 7 Does  
4 does 8 doesn't

- 10** 1 Can Anthony drive?  
2 Can Noor swim?  
3 Can you dance the tango?  
4 Can your children speak two languages?  
5 Can Flora ride a bike?

- 11** 1 three  
2 two  
3 tenth  
4 twenty-first  
5 thirty  
6 twenty-one

- 12** 2 Ankara is ~~a~~ **the** capital of Turkey.  
3 What's ~~a~~ **the** date today?  
4 Casper isn't a dancer. He's ~~the~~ **an** artist.  
5 Our Chinese class is at 10 o'clock in ~~a~~ **the** morning.  
6 Johanna is from **the** USA.

- 13** 1 Visit  
2 Book  
3 Don't take  
4 Don't forget

- 14** 1 bought 6 saw  
2 did 7 took  
3 had 8 knew  
4 made 9 slept  
5 went 10 got

- 15** 1 'd like  
2 like  
3 want  
4 'd like  
5 love  
6 'd like  
7 like  
8 would you like

- 16** 1 a 2 b 3 b 4 c 5 c 6 c  
7 b 8 c 9 b 10 c 11 a 12 c



## VOCABULARY

- 1
  - 1 Hey, Hi
  - 2 Good afternoon, Hello
  - 3 Bye, See you
  - 4 Good night, Goodbye
- 2 artist, singer, waiter, nurse, taxi driver, teacher, office worker, shop assistant
- 3
  - 1 parents
  - 2 father
  - 3 mother
  - 4 brother
  - 5 sisters
  - 6 wife
  - 7 husband
  - 8 children
  - 9 daughter
  - 10 son
- 4
  - 1 not very well
  - 2 OK
  - 3 good / fine
  - 4 good / fine
  - 5 very well
  - 6 great
- 5
  - 1 camera
  - 2 coffee machine
  - 3 guitar
  - 4 bike
  - 5 watch
- 6
  - 1 yellow
  - 2 blue
  - 3 white
  - 4 green
  - 5 red
- 7
  - 1 pencil
  - 2 notebook
  - 3 headphones
  - 4 keyboard
  - 5 mouse
  - 6 scissors
  - 7 plant
  - 8 pen
  - 9 cup of coffee
  - 10 photo
- 8
  - 1 cereal
  - 2 orange
  - 3 fruit juice
  - 4 egg
  - 5 tomato
  - 6 sandwich
  - 7 banana
  - 8 apple
- 9
  - 1 Tea
  - 2 Espresso
  - 3 Americano
  - 4 Mineral water
  - 5 Fruit juice
- 10
  - 1 swim
  - 2 paint
  - 3 throw
  - 4 sing
  - 5 remember

- 11
  - 1 post office
  - 2 shopping centre
  - 3 train station
  - 4 library
  - 5 hospital
  - 6 airport
  - 7 bus station
  - 8 supermarket
  - 9 museum
  - 10 cinema
  - 11 hotel
  - 12 school
  - 13 sports centre
  - 14 swimming pool
- 12
  - 1 entrance
  - 2 cash machine
  - 3 information desk
  - 4 exit
  - 5 lift
  - 6 stairs
  - 7 bus stop
  - 8 parking area
- 13
  - 1 met / saw
  - 2 had
  - 3 saw
  - 4 went
  - 5 did
- 14A
  - 1 What size are you?
  - 2 Can I have a sparkling water, please?
  - 3 How do you spell your surname?
  - 4 I don't feel well.
  - 5 The next train is at two o'clock.
  - 6 It's opposite the supermarket.
- 14B
  - 1 d 2 f 3 e 4 a 5 b 6 c 7 e 8 g
- 15
  - 1 b 2 a 3 c 4 b 5 a 6 c 7 a 8 c

# Speakout

**3<sup>RD</sup> EDITION**

Welcome to the third edition of our best-selling eight-level general English course for adults – *Speakout*. Developed in association with BBC Studios, this new edition has been completely revised based on feedback from *Speakout* users from all over the world.

*Speakout 3rd Edition* offers 100% new content, all-new video, and a fresh new look and feel, all underpinned by flexible components for in-class, online and hybrid use.

- Print version of the Online Practice activities
- Built on the Global Scale of English
- Regular language review sections and cumulative review pages to reinforce learning and help learners to track their progress
- Pronunciation and speaking activities
- Benchmark Test task types included

## Workbook

- Audio available online

### Also available

- Student's Book and eBook with Online Practice
- Student's eBook with Online Practice Access Code

*Speakout 3rd Edition* is fully accessible on your computer, tablet and mobile phone so that you can enjoy the full functionality of your course wherever you are.

[pearsonenglish.com/speakout3e](https://pearsonenglish.com/speakout3e)



### Learning English with Pearson?

Access English language materials to support your learning journey.

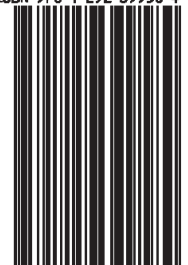
### Ready to prove your English skills?

Get exclusive preparation materials for Pearson English exams.

[pearsonenglish.com/exams-offer](https://pearsonenglish.com/exams-offer)

Speakout 3rd Edition	GSE	Benchmark	Pearson English International Certificate
A1	22-32	Benchmark Test A	A1
A2	30-38	Benchmark Test A	Level 1 (A2)
A2+	36-44	Benchmark Test A	Level 1 (A2)
B1	42-52	Benchmark Test B1	Level 2 (B1)
B1+	50-60	Benchmark Test B1	Level 2 (B1)
B2	58-67	Benchmark Test B2	Level 3 (B2)
B2+	64-76	Benchmark Test B2	Level 3 (B2)
C1-C2	73-90	Benchmark Test C	Level 4 (C1) & Level 5 (C2)

ISBN 978-1-292-39958-4


**Speakout**